

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



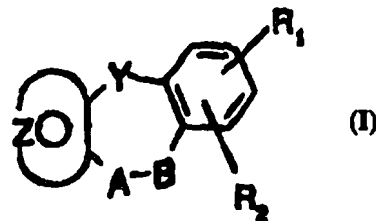
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 223/20, 223/28, 401/12, 495/04, A61K 31/55, C07D 487/04, 498/04, 267/20, 243/38, 471/04</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/22282 (43) International Publication Date: 25 July 1996 (25.07.96)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/01051 (22) International Filing Date: 16 January 1996 (16.01.96) (30) Priority Data: 08/373,169 17 January 1995 (17.01.95) US 08/548,805 22 December 1995 (22.12.95) US (71) Applicant: AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY [US/US]; Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US). (72) Inventors: ALBRIGHT, Jay, Donald; 5 Clifford Court, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). VENKATESAN, Aranapakam, Mudum- bai; 86-35 Queens Boulevard, 4J, Elmhurst, NY 11373 (US). DELOS SANTOS, Efren, Guillermo; 38 Birchwood Terrace, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). (74) Agents: ALICE, Ronald, W.; American Home Products Corpo- ration, Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US) et al.</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, IS, JP, KG, KP, KR, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	

(54) Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

(57) Abstract

Tricyclic compound of general formula (I) as defined herein which exhibit antagonist activity at V₁ and/or V₂ receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity, methods for using such compounds in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water, and process for preparing such compounds.



FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LJ	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

5

10

Title: TRICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE VASOPRESSIN
ANTAGONISTS

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

20

2. Background of the Invention

Vasopressin is released from the posterior pituitary either in response to increased plasma osmolarity detected by brain osmoreceptors or decreased blood volume and blood pressure sensed by low-pressure volume receptors and arterial baroreceptors. The hormone exerts its action through two well defined receptor subtypes: vascular V₁ and renal epithelial V₂ receptors. Vasopressin-induced antidiuresis, mediated by renal epithelial V₂ receptors, helps to maintain normal plasma osmolarity, blood volume and blood pressure.

Vasopressin is involved in some cases of congestive heart failure where peripheral resistance is increased. V₁ antagonists may decrease systemic vascular resistance, increase cardiac output and prevent

vasopressin induced coronary vasoconstriction. Thus, in conditions with vasopressin induce increases in total peripheral resistance and altered local blood flow, V₁-antagonists may be therapeutic agents. V₁ antagonists

5 may decrease blood pressure, induced hypotensive effects and thus be therapeutically useful in treatment of some types of hypertension.

The blockage of V₂ receptors is useful in treating diseases characterized by excess renal
10 reabsorption of free water. Antidiuresis is regulated by the hypothalamic release of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) which binds to specific receptors on renal collecting tubule cells. This binding stimulates adenylyl cyclase and promotes the cAMP-mediated
15 incorporation of water pores into the luminal surface of these cells. V₂ antagonists may correct the fluid retention in congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephritic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia.

20 Elevated vasopressin levels occur in congestive heart failure which is more common in older patients with chronic heart failure. In patients with hyponatremic congestive heart failure and elevated vasopressin levels, a V₂ antagonist may be beneficial in
25 promoting free water excretion by antagonizing the action of antidiuretic hormone. On the basis of biochemical and pharmacological effects of the hormone, antagonists of vasopressin are expected to be therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or
30 prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal
35 states of water retention.

The following prior art references describe peptide vasopressin antagonists: M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 382(1992); M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 3895(1992); H. Gavras and B. Lammek, 5 U.S. Patent 5,070,187 (1991); M. Manning and W.H. Sawyer, U.S. Patent 5,055,448(1991) F.E. Ali, U.S. Patent 4,766,108(1988); R.R. Ruffolo et al., Drug News and Perspective, 4(4), 217, (May)(1991). P.D. Williams et al., have reported on potent hexapeptide 10 oxytocin antagonists [J. Med. Chem., 35, 3905(1992)] which also exhibit weak vasopressin antagonist activity in binding to V₁ and V₂ receptors. Peptide vasopressin antagonists suffer from a lack of oral activity and many of these peptides are not selective antagonists since 15 they also exhibit partial agonist activity.

Non-peptide vasopressin antagonists have recently been disclosed, Y. Yamamura et al., Science, 252, 579(1991); Y. Yamamura et al., Br. J. Pharmacol., 105, 787(1992); Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm Co., LTD.) 20 EP 0514667-A1; EPO 382185-A2; WO9105549 and U.S.5,258,510; WO 9404525 Yamanouchi Pharm.Co.,Ltd., WO 9420473; WO 9412476; WO 9414796; Fujisawa Co. Ltd., EP 620216-A1 Ogawa et al, (Otsuka Pharm. Co.) EP 470514A disclose carbostyryl derivatives and pharmaceutical 25 compositions containing the same. Non-peptide oxytocin and vasopressin antagonist have been disclosed by Merck and Co.; M.G. Bock and P.D. Williams, EP 0533242A; M.G. Bock et al., EP 0533244A; J.M. Erb, D.F. Verber, P.D. Williams, EP 0533240A; K. Gilbert et al., EP 0533243A.

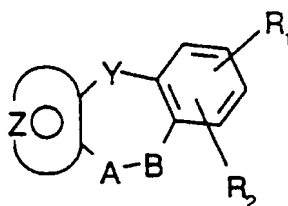
30 Premature birth can cause infant health problems and mortality and a key mediator in the mechanism of labor is the peptide hormone oxytocin. On the basis of the pharmacological action of oxytocin, antagonists of this hormone are useful in the prevention of preterm labor, B.E. Evans et al., J. Med. Chem. 35, 3919(1992), J. Med. Chem., 36, 3993(1993) and references

therein. The compounds of this invention are antagonists of the peptide hormone oxytocin and are useful in the control of premature birth.

The present invention relates to novel
 5 tricyclic derivatives which exhibit antagonist activity at V₁ and/or V₂ receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity. The compounds also exhibit antagonist activity at oxytocin receptors.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

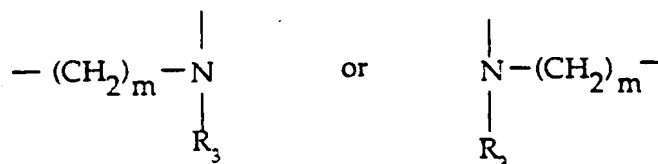
10 This invention relates to new compounds selected from those of the general formula I:



Formula I

15 Wherein Y is (CH₂)_n, O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH₂, CHN[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂, CHO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHS-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),

20 wherein n is an integer from 0-2:
 A-B is

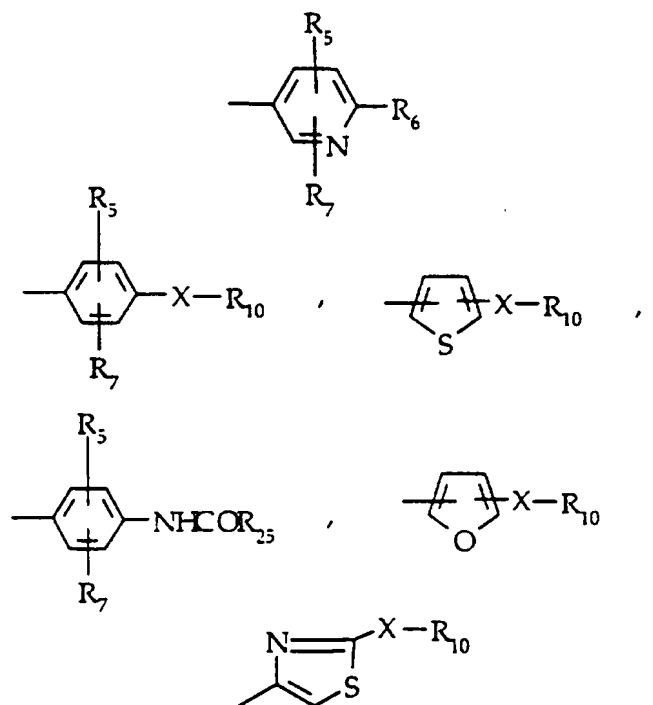


wherein m is an integer from 1-2, provided that when Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and $n=2$, m may also be zero and when n is zero, m may also be three, provided also that when y is $-(CH_2)_n$ and n is 2, m may not also be two.

- 5 R_1 is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃; lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -
- 10 N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
- R_2 is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R_1 and R_2 taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
- 15 R_3 is the moiety:



wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the moiety

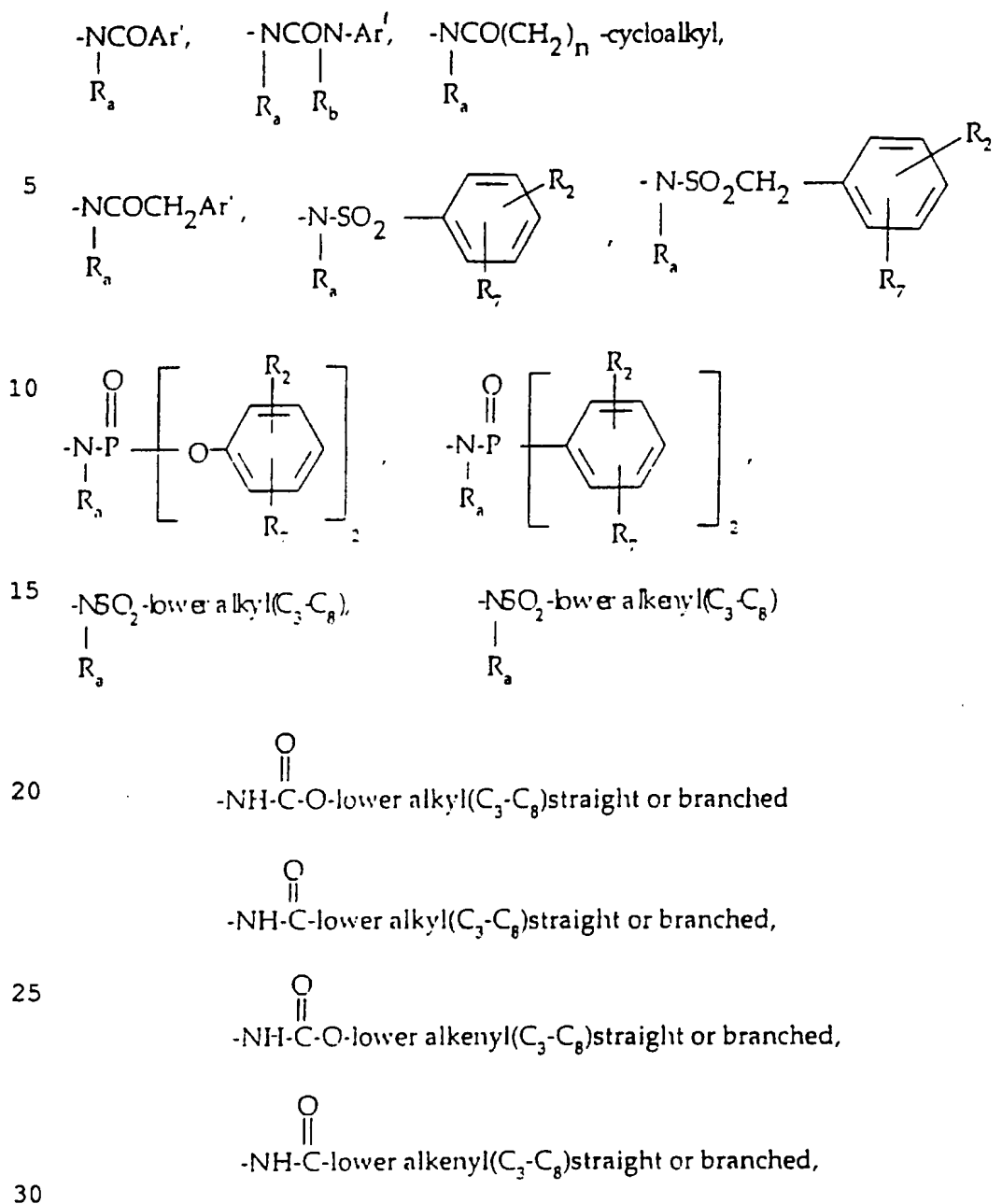


R₄ is hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃); -CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃);

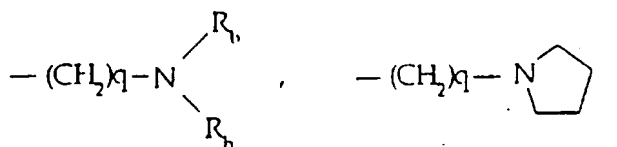
5

R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen;

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5



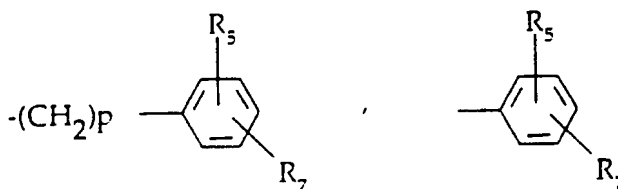
10

-(CH₂)₂O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

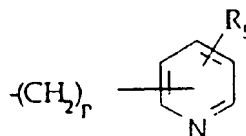
(b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),

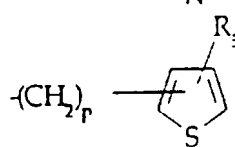
15



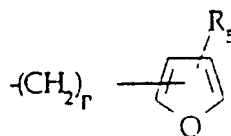
20



25



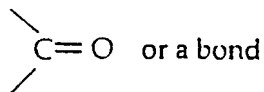
30



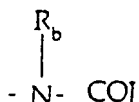
and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

35



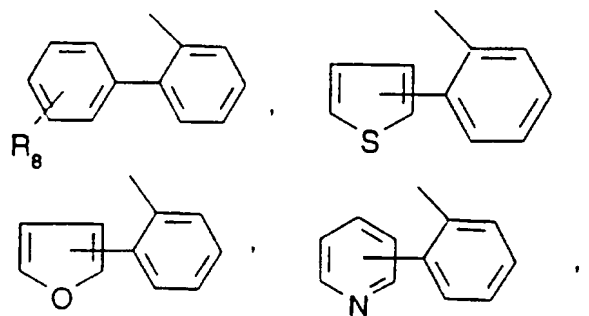
- 5 and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined
 (c) a moiety of the formula:



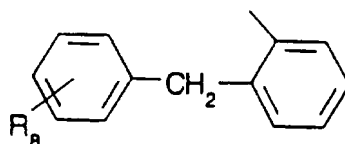
10

- wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or
 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched,
 O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower
 alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,
 15 tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

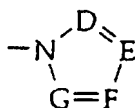
20



25

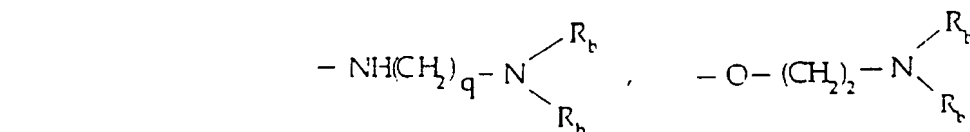
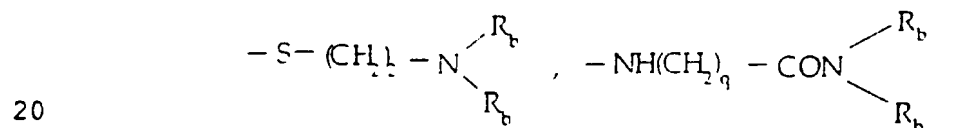
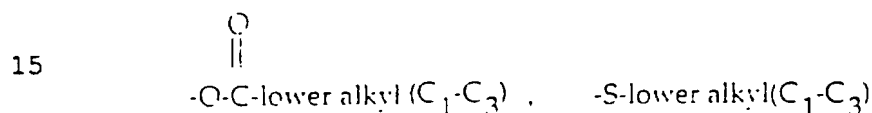


- 30 or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran,
 tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



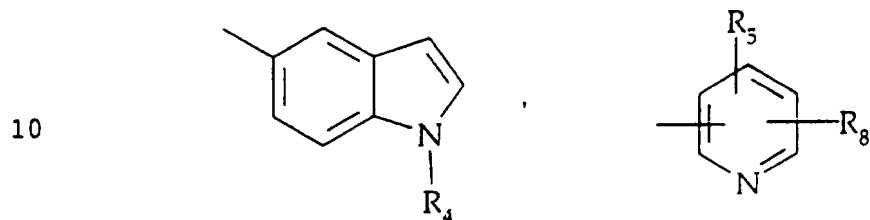
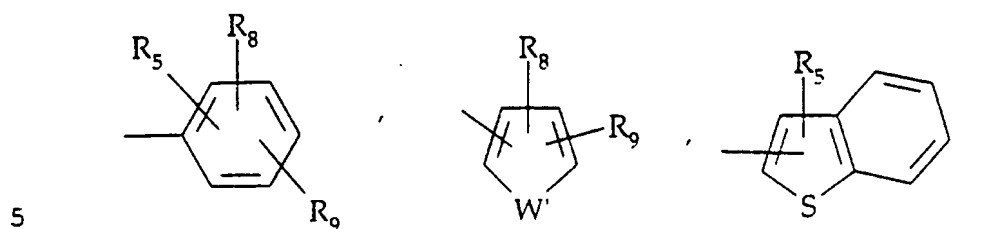
35

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

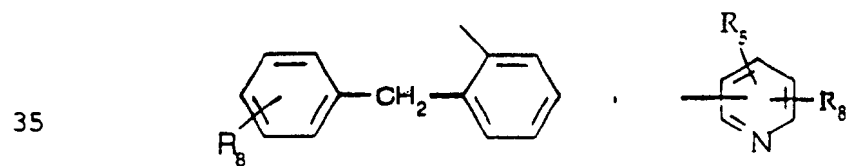
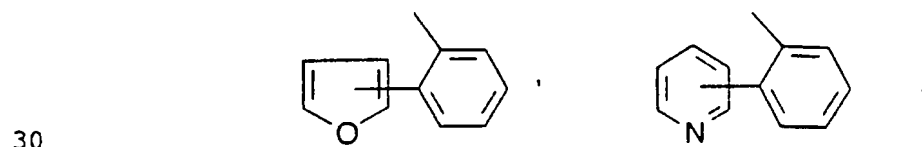
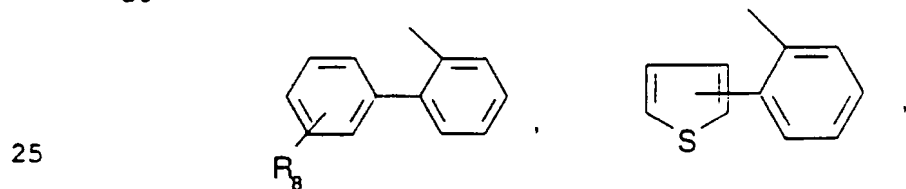


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and OH, R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

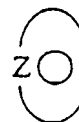
Ar' is a moiety selected from the group



R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃); O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 15 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino or NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 W' is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);
 20 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



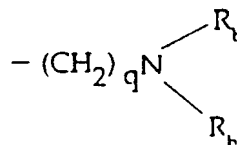
and the moiety



5

represents: (1) phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy, or (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl amino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom; (4) a 5 or 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (5) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, formyl, a moiety of the formula:

20



25

halogen or (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy. For example, the fused heterocyclic ring may be represented by furan, pyrrole, pyrazole, thiophene, thiazole, oxazole, imidazole, pyrimidine or pyridine ring which may be substituted or unsubstituted.

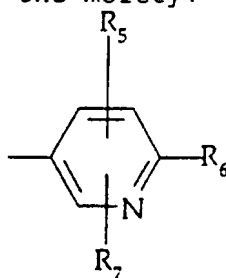
30

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within the group of the compounds defined by
 Formula I, certain subgroups of compounds are broadly
 preferred. Broadly preferred are those compounds
 wherein R₃ is a moiety:



and Ar is selected from the moiety:

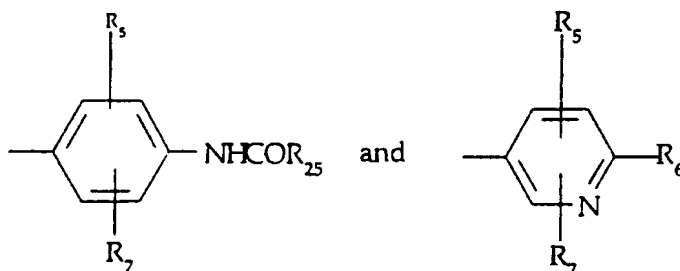


wherein R₅, R₆ and R₇ are as hereinbefore defined.

Especially preferred are compounds wherein R₃
 is the moiety:

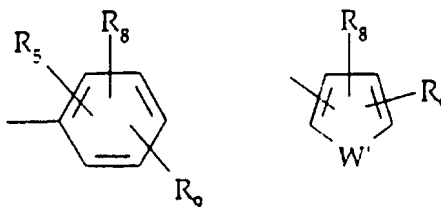


and Ar is selected from the moiety:



R₆ is NHCOAr' and Ar' is

5

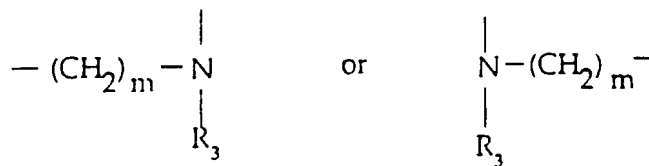


wherein R₈, R₉, R₂₅ and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

10

Also especially broadly preferred are compounds wherein Y in Formula I is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is zero or one; A-B is

15

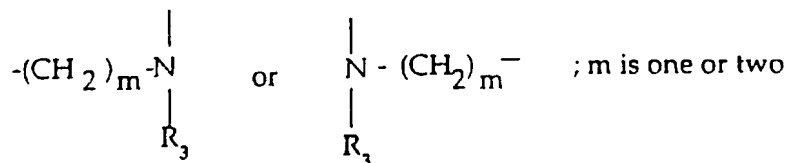


and R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉ and R₁₀ are as hereinbefore defined; and m is an integer from 1-2.

20

The most broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is one; A-B is

25



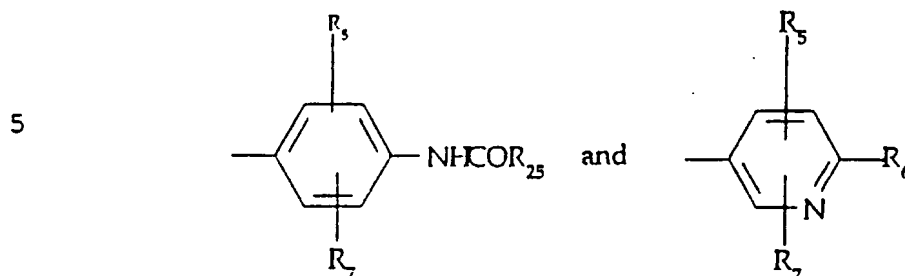
R₃ is the moiety:

30

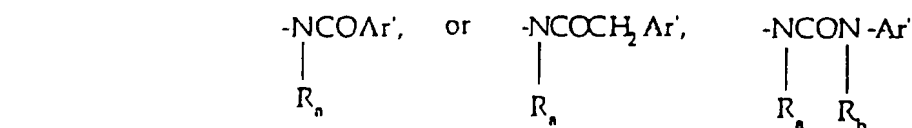


35

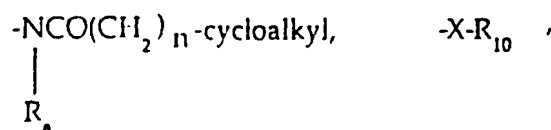
Ar is



10 R₆ is

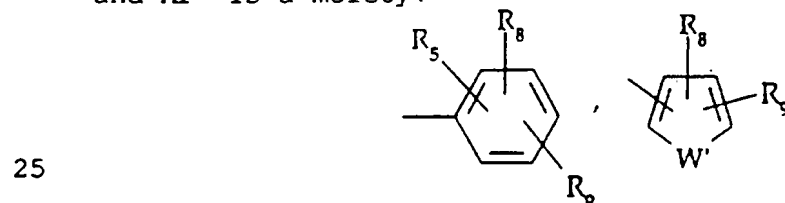


15



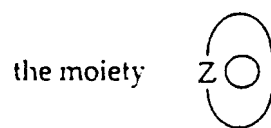
20

and Ar' is a moiety:

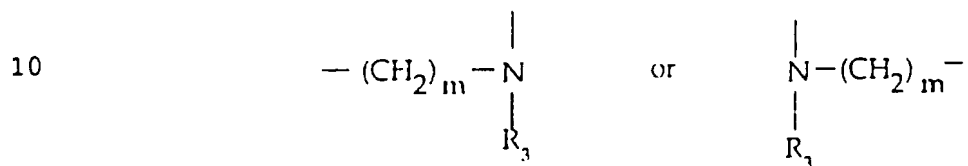


30 Cycloalkyl R_a, R_b and W' are as previously defined and R₈ and R₉ are preferably ortho CF₃, Cl, OCH₃, CH₃, SCH₃ or OCF₃ substituents or Ar' is a disubstituted derivative wherein R₈ and R₉ are independently Cl, OCH₃, CH₃ and F.

35 The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is -(CH₂)_n-, n is zero or one and



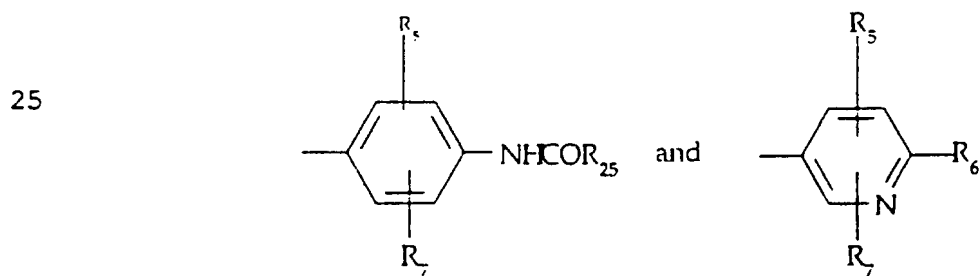
5 represents a phenyl, substituted phenyl, thiophene, furan, pyrrole or a pyridine ring;
A-B is



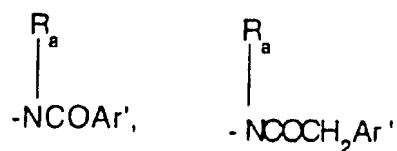
15 m is one when n is one and m is two when n is zero;
R₃ is the moiety:



wherein Ar is

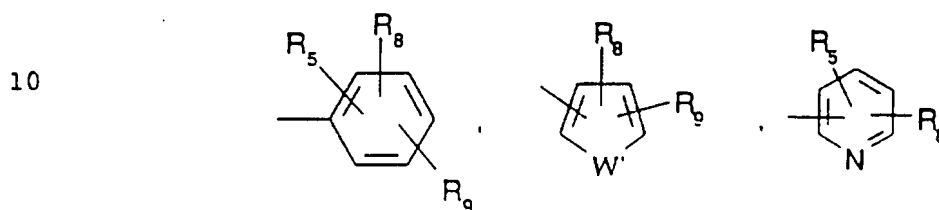


30 and R₆ is selected from the group



5

where Ar' is selected from the moieties:



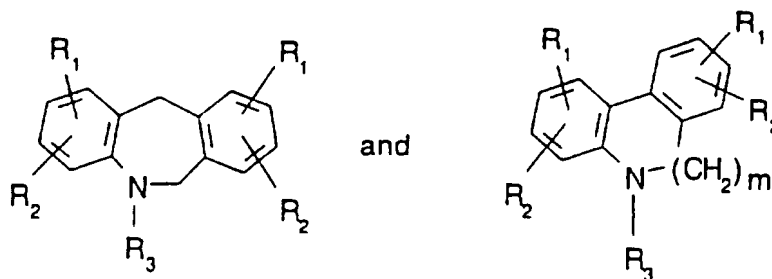
10

15 and R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₂₅ and W' are as previously defined.

Most particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

20

25



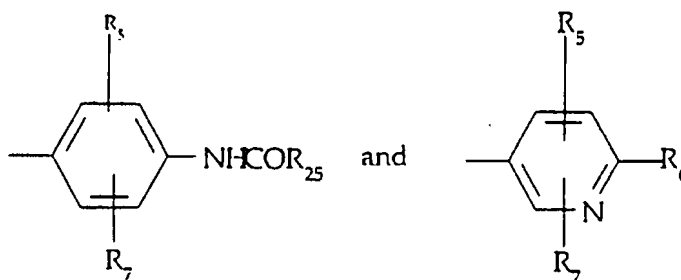
wherein m is an integer one or two; R₁ and R₂ are as previously defined;

30 R₃ is the moiety:

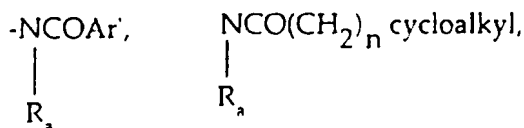


35 wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formulae:

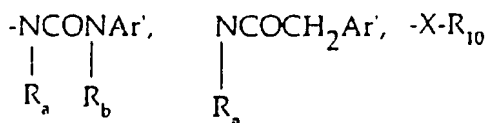
5



10

R₆ is

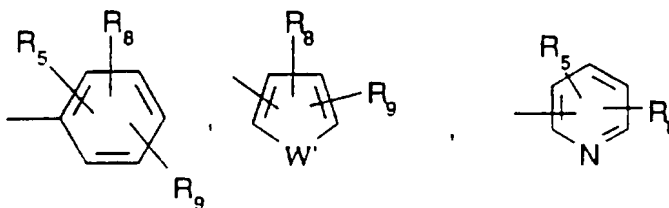
15



20

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl and wherein Ar' is selected from the moieties:

25

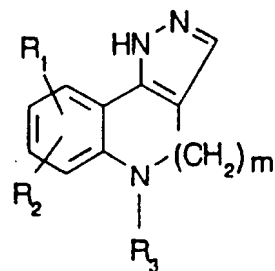
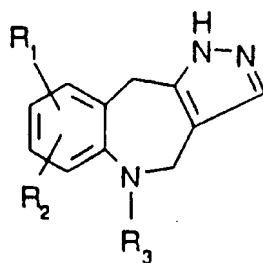


30

R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, CH_3 or $-C_2H_5$; and R_5 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} , X and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

5



10

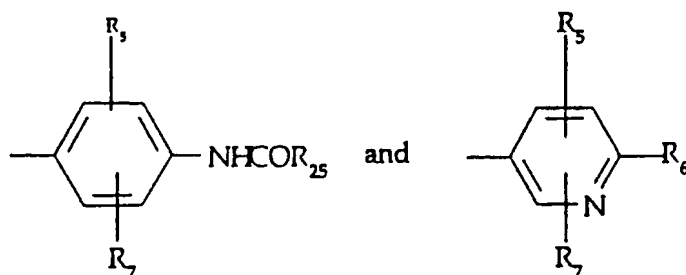
wherein m is an integer one or two; R₁ and R₂ are as previously defined;
R₃ is the moiety:



15

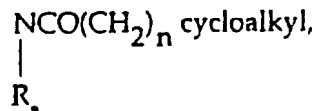
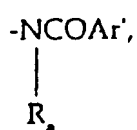
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formulae:

20

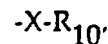
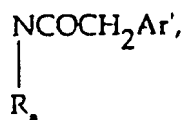
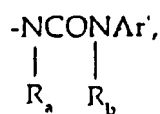


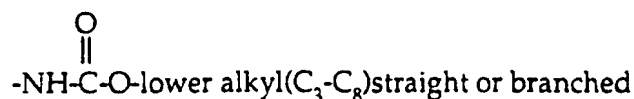
25

R₆ is

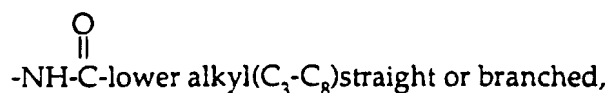


30

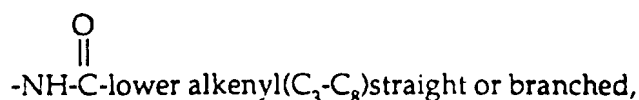
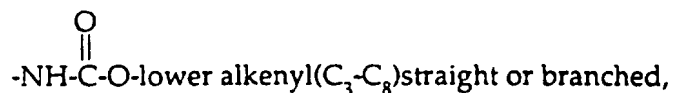




5

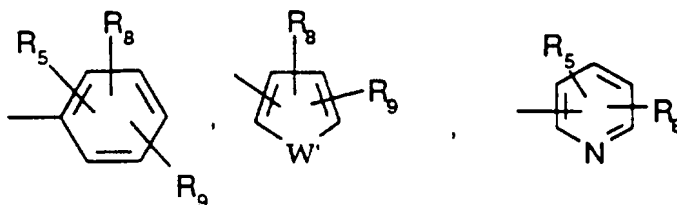


10



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl and wherein Ar' is selected from the moieties:

20



R_a is independently selected from hydrogen, CH₃ or -C₂H₅; and R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

25

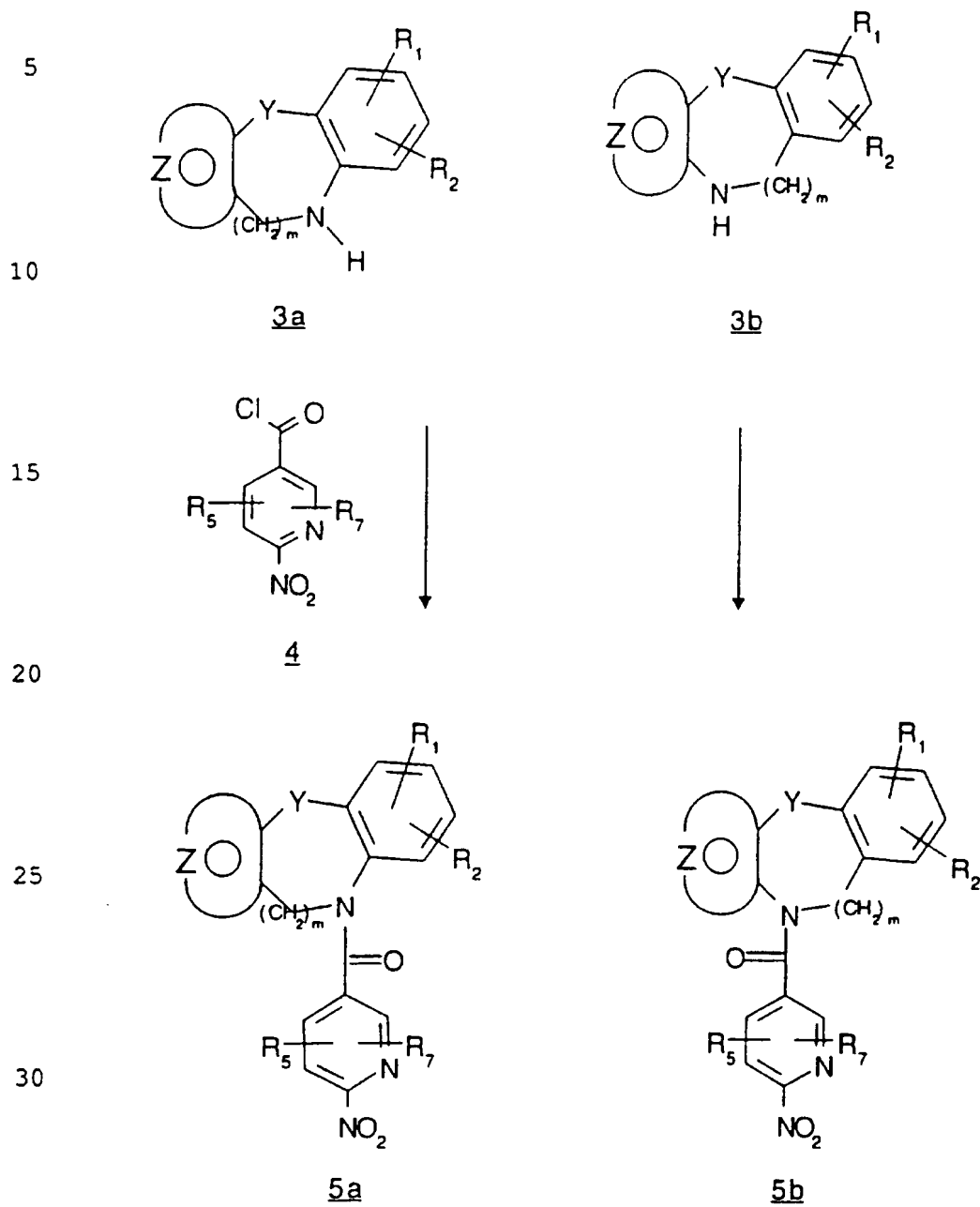
Compounds of this invention may be prepared as shown in Scheme I by reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 3a and 3b with a substituted or unsubstituted 6-nitropyridine-3-carbonyl chloride 4 to give the intermediates 5a and 5b. Reduction of the nitro group in intermediates 5a and 5b gives the 6-amino-3-pyridinylcarbonyl derivatives 6a and 6b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediates 5a and 5b may be carried out under catalytic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazine-ethanol) or under

30

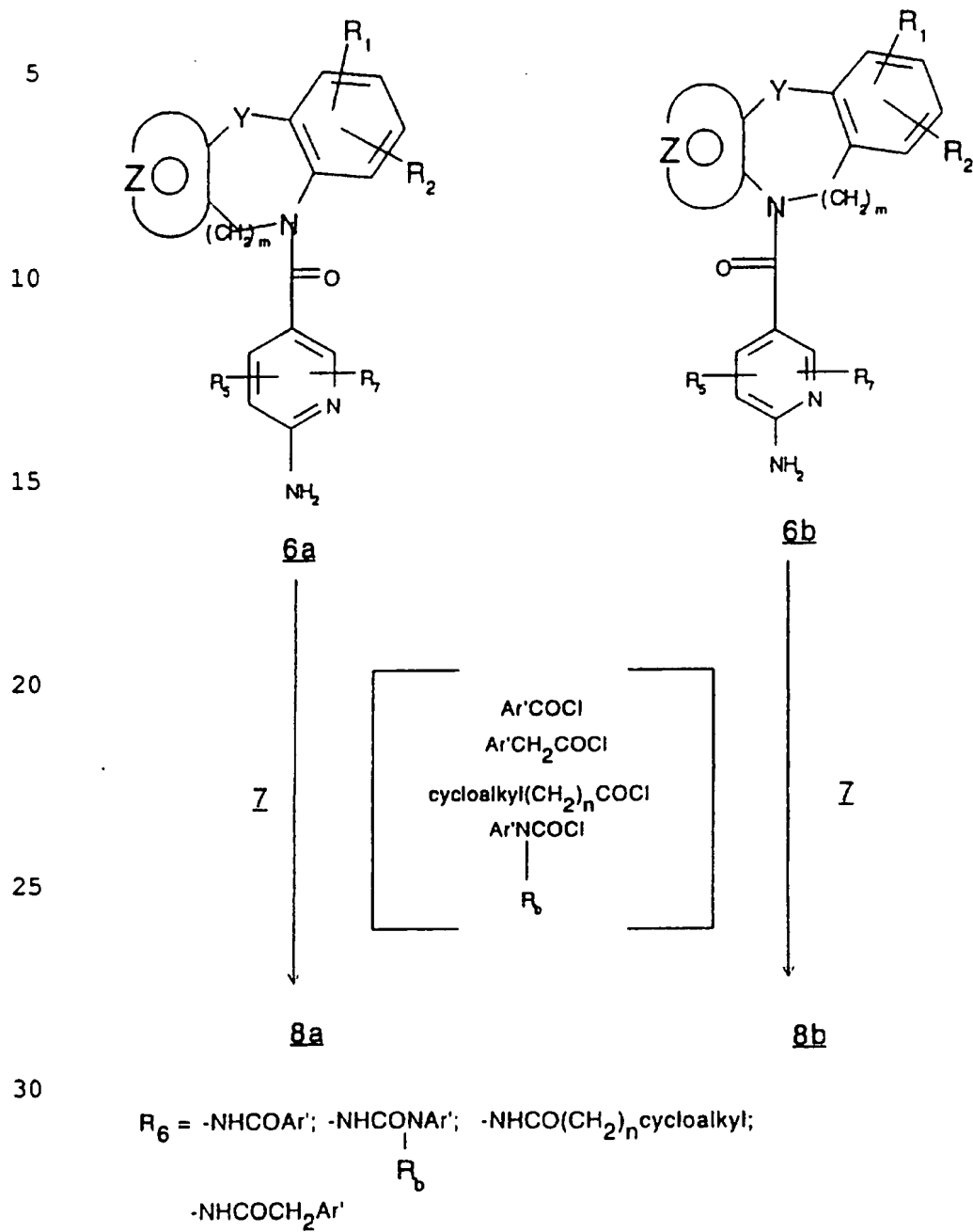
chemical reduction conditions (SnCl₂-ethanol; Zn-acetic acid; TiCl₃) and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatibility with the preservation of other functional groups in the molecule.

Reaction of compounds of Formula 6a and 6b with aroyl chlorides, heteroaroyl chlorides, arylsulfonyl chlorides, diarylphosphinyl chlorides, diphenoxyphosphinyl chlorides, alkyl (C₃-C₈) carbonyl chlorides, alkenyl(C₃-C₈)carbonyl chlorides, alkoxy(C₃-C₈)carbonyl chlorides, alkenyloxy(C₃-C₈)carbonyl chlorides, alkyl(C₃-C₈)sulfonyl chlorides, alkenyl(C₃-C₈)sulfonyl chlorides cycloalkylcarbonyl chlorides, arylcarbamoyl chlorides or heteroaryl-carbamoyl chlorides as illustrated in Scheme 1, gives the novel compounds 8a and 8b of this invention. The reactions may be carried out in solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine or pyridine at 0°C to 50°C. If more than one aroyl, heteroaroyl or arylsulfonyl group, etc. is introduced during the reaction, mild base treatment (NaOH, KOH etc.) in a lower alcohol removes the second such group to give the products 8a and 8b.

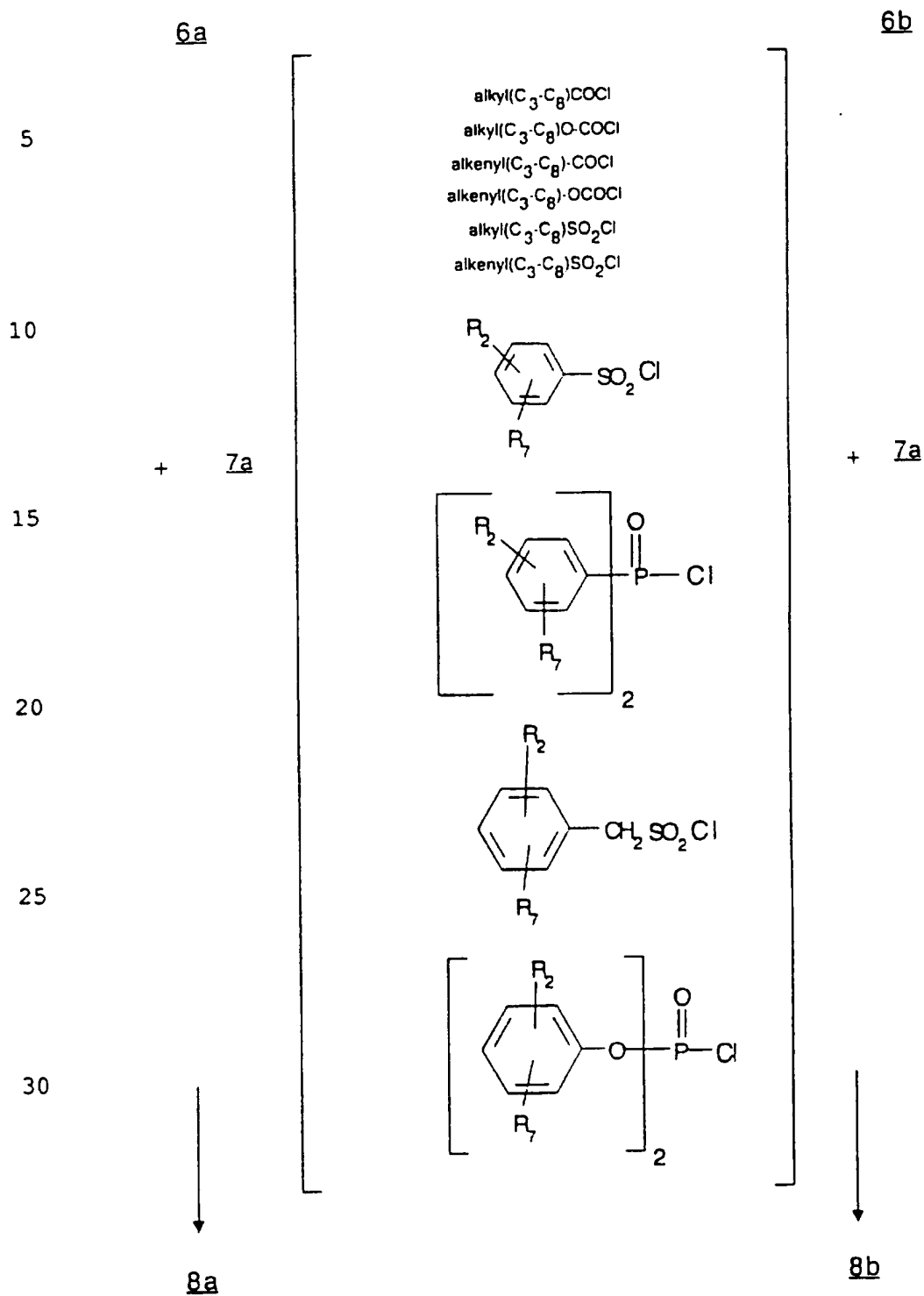
Scheme 1



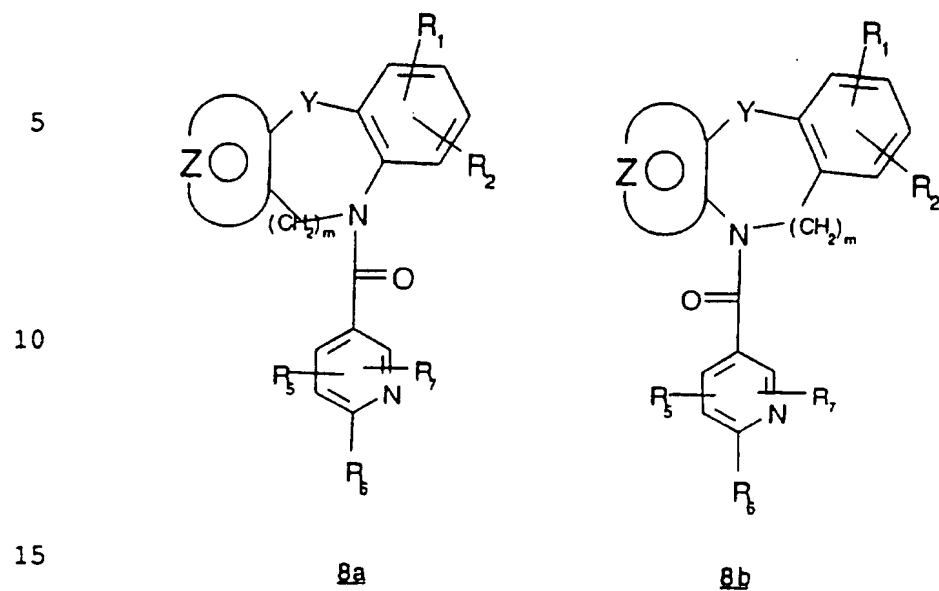
Scheme 1 (Cont'd.)



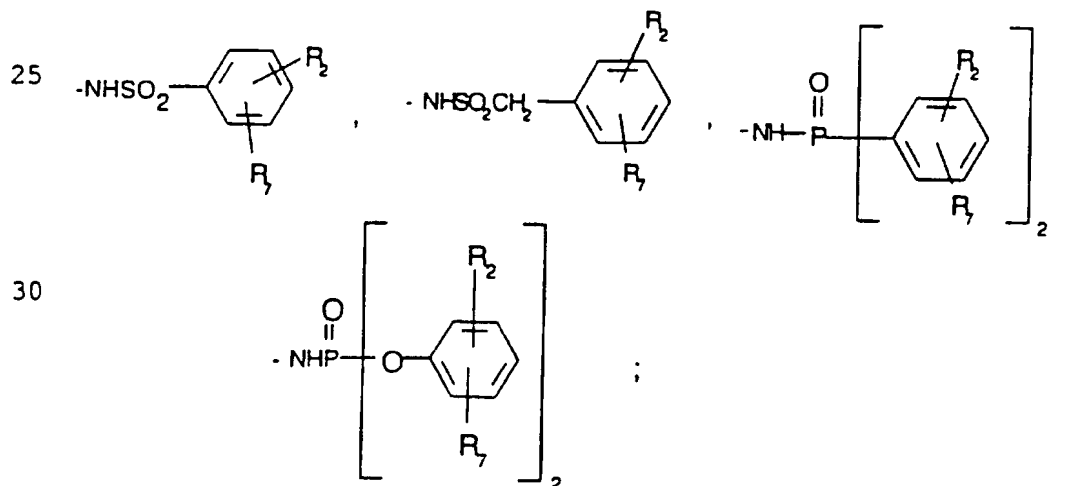
Scheme 1 (Cont'd.)



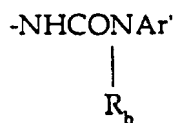
Scheme 1 (Cont'd.)



$R_6 = -\text{NHCOalkenyl}(C_3-C_8), -\text{NHCOalkyl}(C_3-C_8), -\text{NHCO}_2\text{alkyl}(C_3-C_8),$
 20 $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{alkyl}(C_3-C_8), -\text{NHCO}_2\text{alkenyl}(C_3-C_8)$
 $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{alkenyl}(C_3-C_8)$

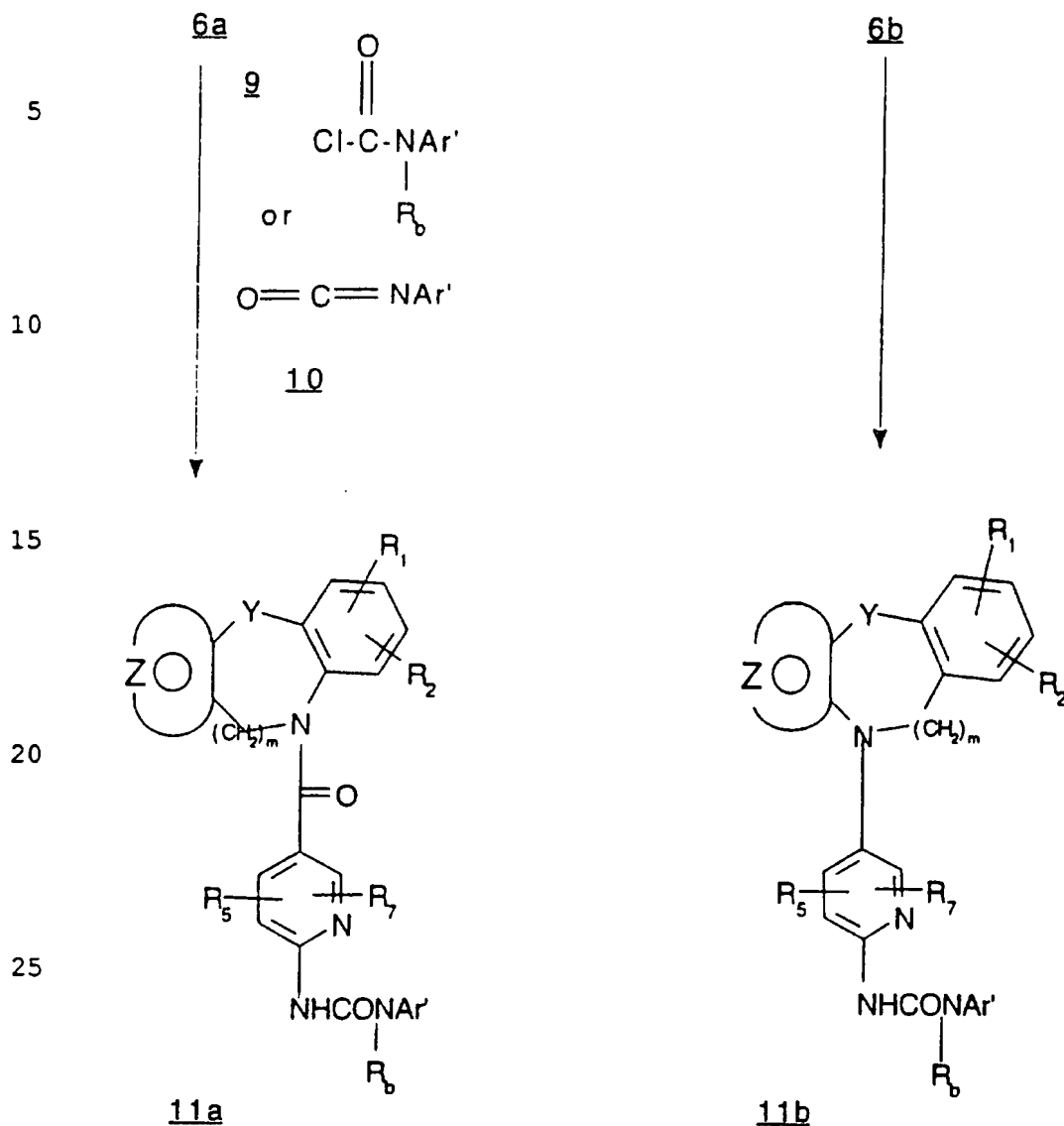


Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 6a and 6b with either a carbamoyl derivative 9 or a isocyanate derivative 10 gives compounds (Scheme 2) of Formula 11a and 11b which are vasopressin antagonists
5 and/or oxytocin antagonists of Formula I wherein R₆ is



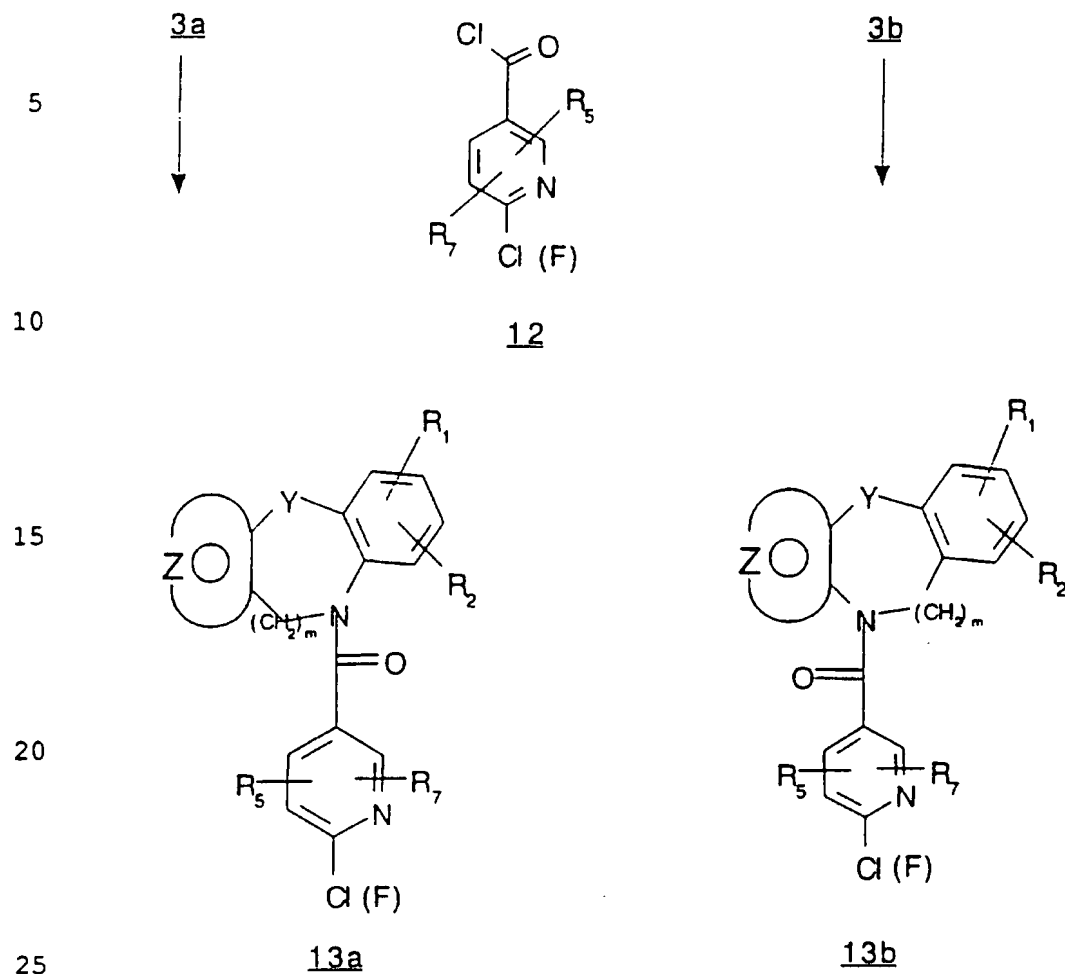
and R_b is H, CH₃ or C₂H₅.

Scheme 2



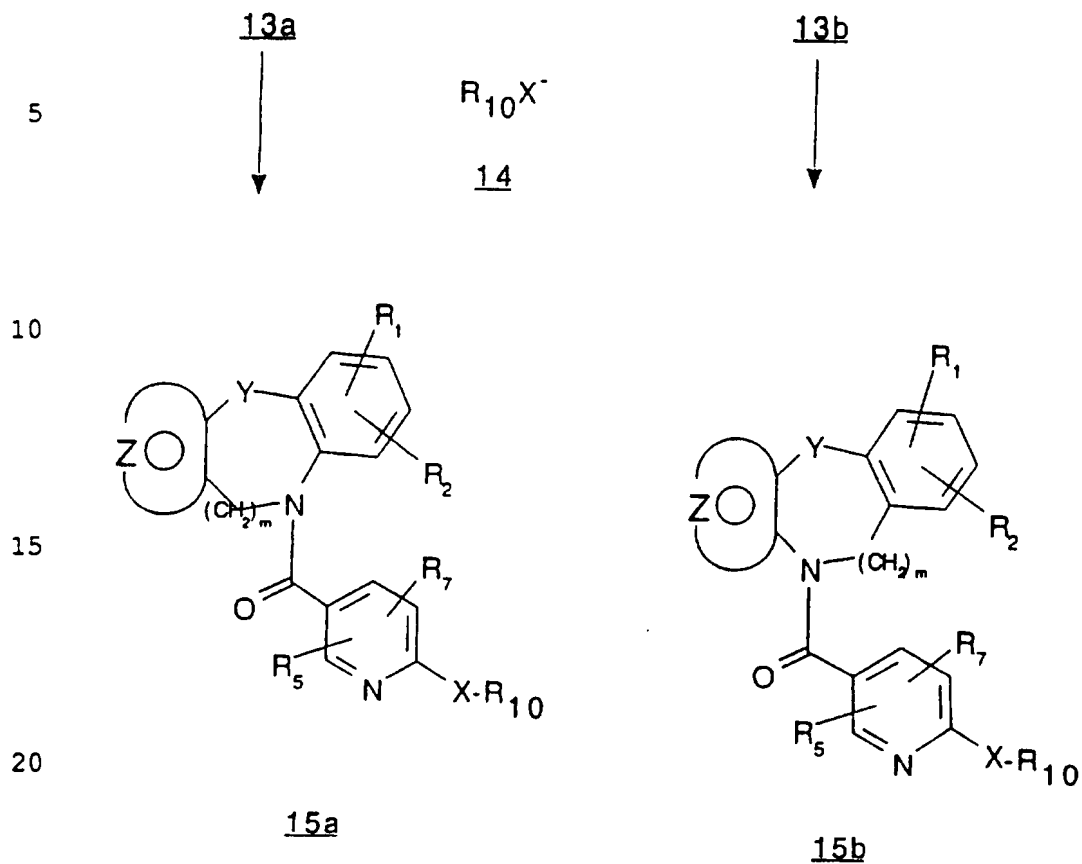
30

Reaction of tricyclic derivatives of Formula 3a and 3b with a 6-chloro or a 6-fluoropyridin-3-carbonyl chloride 12 gives intermediates 13a and 13b (Scheme 3).

Scheme 3

The intermediates 13a and 13b may be reacted with $R_{10}X^-$ (14) wherein R_{10} is as previously defined and X is O, S, NH or NCH_3 to give derivatives of 15a and 15b as shown in Scheme 4.

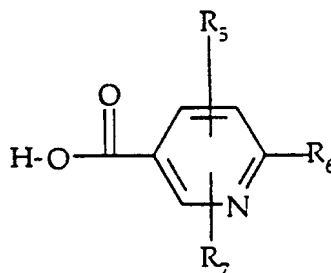
Scheme 4



25 The compounds of Formula I wherein Y, A-B, Z,
R₁, R₂ and R₃ are as defined and the R₃ (-COAr) aryl
group is



wherein R_6 is as previously defined may be prepared as shown in Scheme 5 by first synthesizing the pyridinyl moieties 16 which are to be attached to the tricyclic benzazepine units.



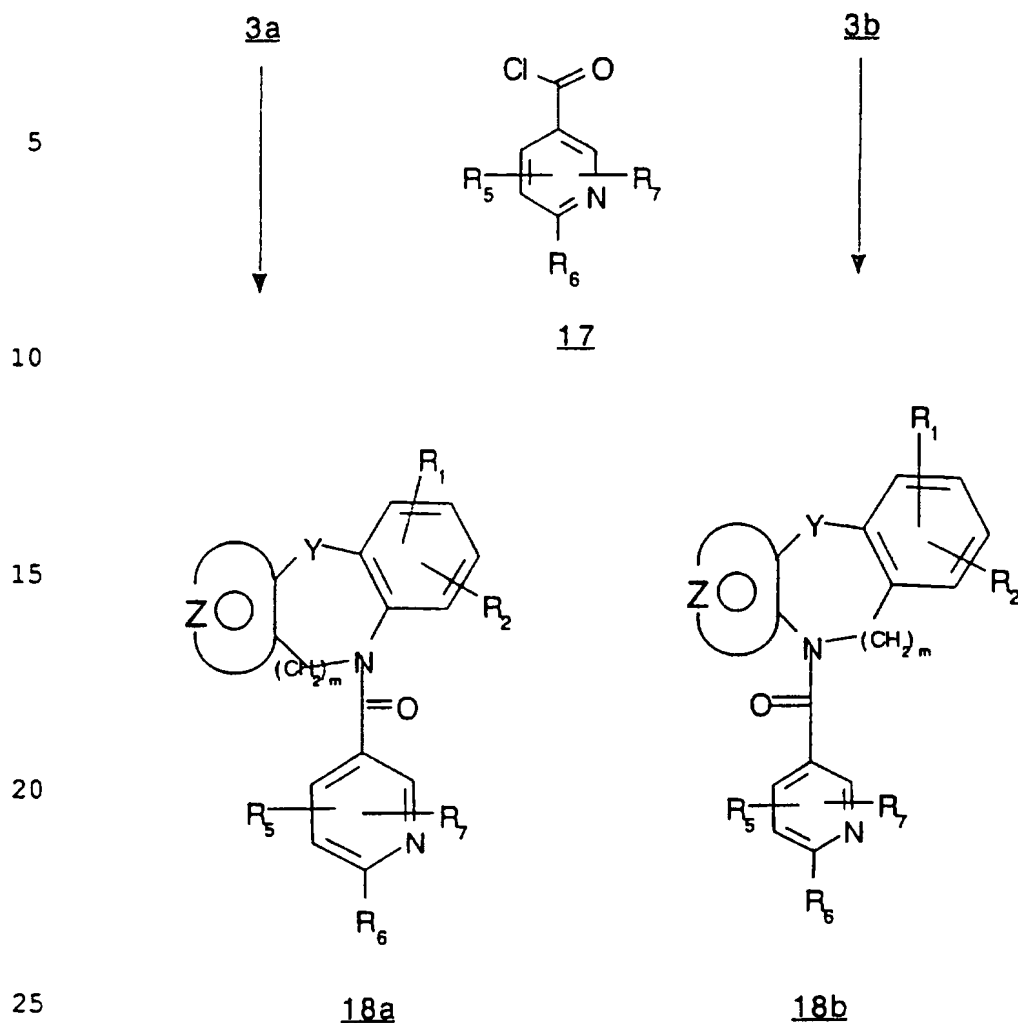
16

5

The preformed pyridinyl moieties 16 may be activated for coupling by reaction with peptide coupling reagents or preferably activated by conversion to the pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides 17. The coupling may be carried out in inert solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary amine such as triethylamine. The reactions may also be carried out in pyridine and related alkyl pyridines.

10

Scheme 5



The starting materials 3a and 3b in Scheme 1 can be made by literature methods. For example, intermediate 6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepines and substituted derivatives are prepared according to literature procedures: L.H. Werner, et al., J. Med. Chem., 8, 74-80 (1965); A.W.H. Wardrop et al., J. Chem. Soc. Perkins Trans I, 1279-1285 (1976).

Substituted 5,11-dihydrodibenz[b,e]azepin-6-one are prepared by literature procedures: J. Schmutz

et al., Helv. Chim. Acta., 48, 336 (1965); and reduced to substituted 6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepines with lithium aluminum hydride, borane, borane-dimethylsulfide and agents known to reduce an amide carbonyl to a methylene group. Intermediate 10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]thiazepines are prepared by literature procedures - for example, see K. Brewster et al., J. Chem. Soc. Perkin I, 1286 (1976). Reduction of either dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepines [A.W.H. Wardrop et al., J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I, 1279 (1976)] and dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-11(10H)-ones and dibenz[b,f][1,4]thiazepin-11(10H)-ones - J. Schmutz et al., Helv. Chim. Acta., 48, 336 (1965); may be carried out with lithium aluminum hydride in inert solvents such as dioxane and the like. The tricyclic 6,7-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepine intermediates of Formula 30 may be prepared by the literature procedures: T. Ohta et al., Tetrahedron Lett., 26, 5811 (1985); Wiesner et al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 77, 675 (1955); or derivatives may be prepared by coupling procedures illustrated in Scheme 7. The reduction of nitro compounds of structure type 31 followed by ring closure, affords lactams 32 which are reduced to give tricyclic azepines of Formula 33.

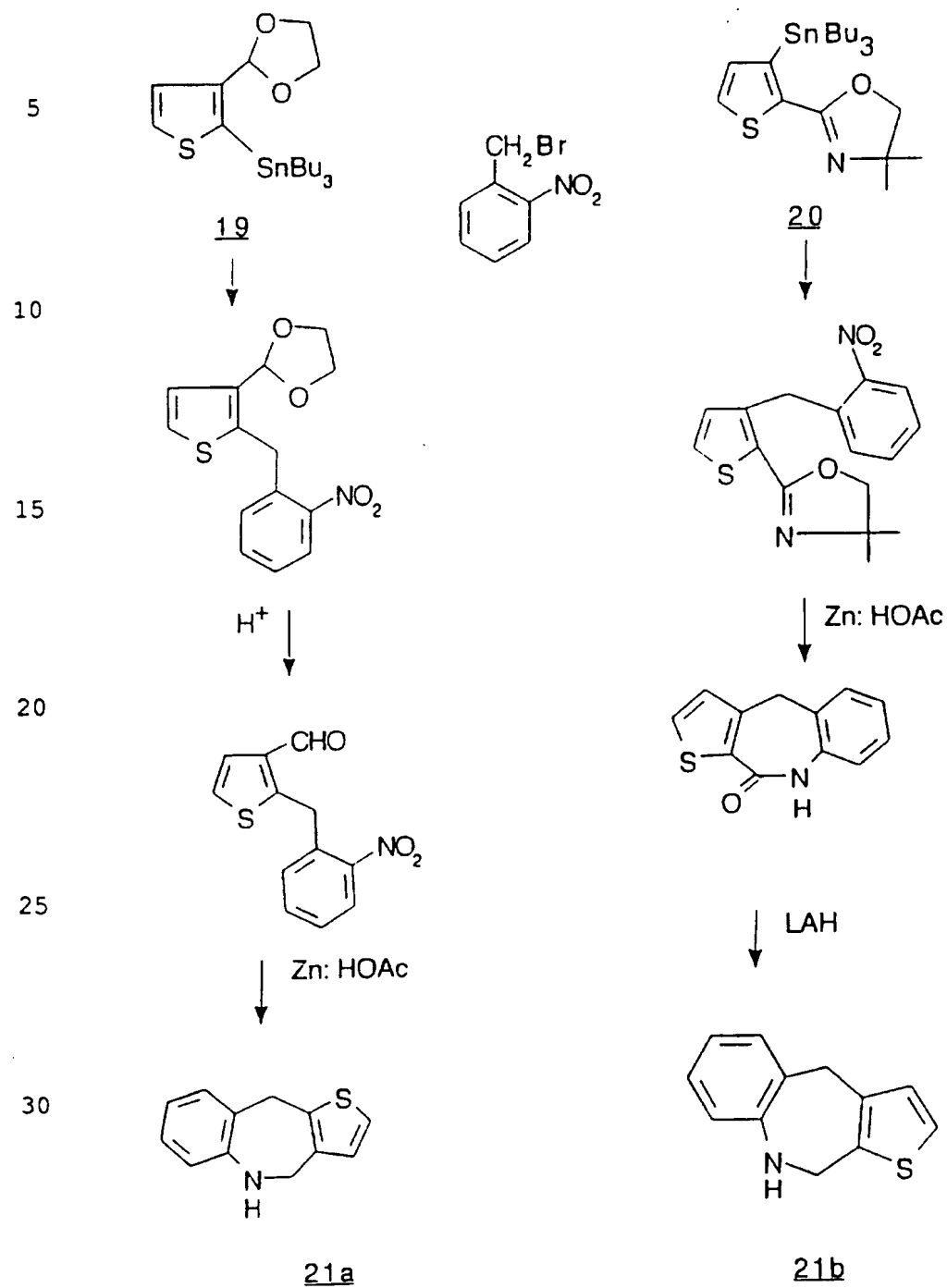
5,11-Dihydro-6H-pyrido[3,2-c][1]benzazepines are prepared by literature procedures - J. Firl et al., Liebigs Ann. Chem. 469, (1989). 11H-Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-6(5H) ones have been reported by J.F.F. Liegeois et al., J. Med. Chem. 36, 2107 (1993) and these derivatives are reduced to 11H-pyrido[[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepines. The synthesis of tricyclic 1,4,5,10-tetrahydropyrazolo-[4,3-c][1]benzodiazepine and the 3-chloro derivative have been reported - G. Palazzino, et al., J. Heterocyclic Chem., 26, 71 (1989). 4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine 21a and 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine 21b may be prepared by coupling tributyltin derivatives 19 and

20 with 2-nitrobenzyl bromide in the presence of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) as shown in Scheme 6.

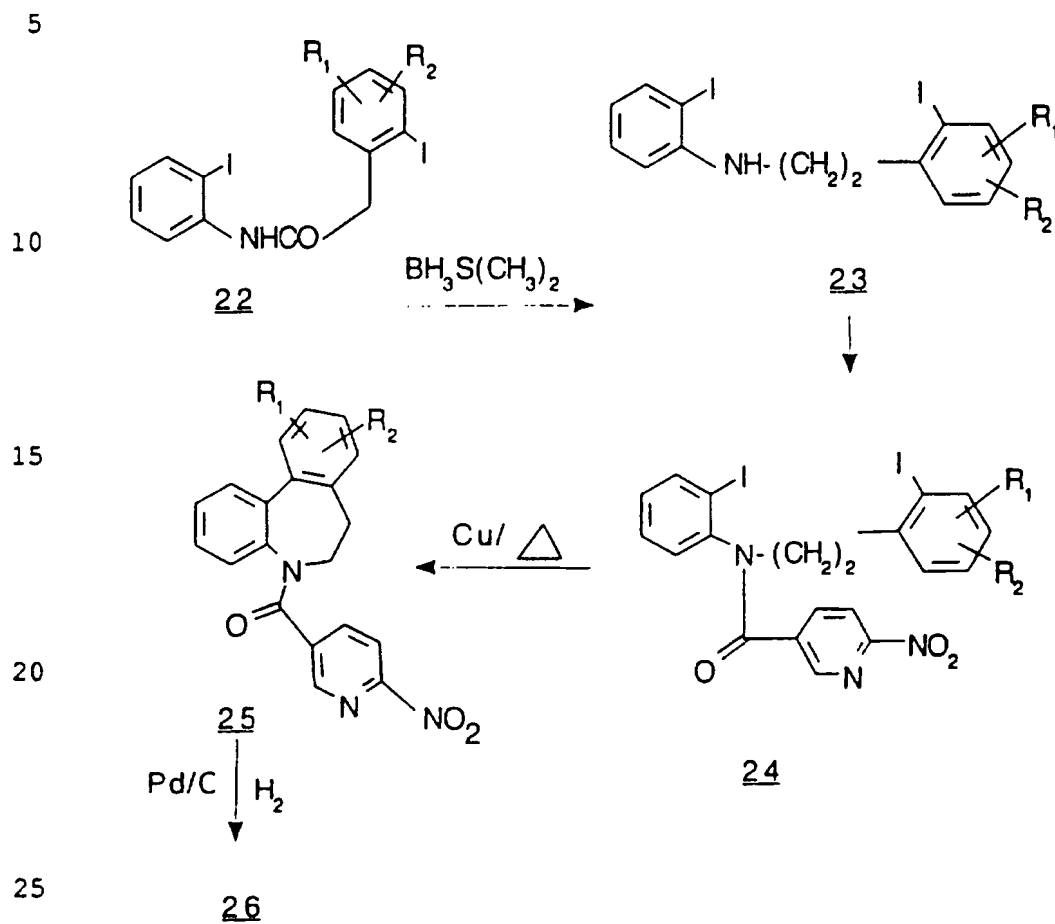
5 Following coupling of intermediate 24 to give the tricyclic azepine 25, the nitro group is reduced to give the 6-aminonicotinoyl derivative 26. The derivative 26 is then reacted with the appropriate acid chlorides as illustrated in Scheme 7 to give the products 27 and 27a.

10 Also depicted in Scheme 7 is the synthesis of intermediate tricyclic azepine 30 and 33. The tricyclic lactam derivatives 29 and 32 may be prepared by reduction of nitro intermediates 28 and 31, followed by ring closure of the corresponding amino derivatives.
15 These tricyclic lactam intermediates 29 and 32 may be reduced with lithium aluminum hydride (LAH) or borane to give the tricyclic azepines 30 and 33.

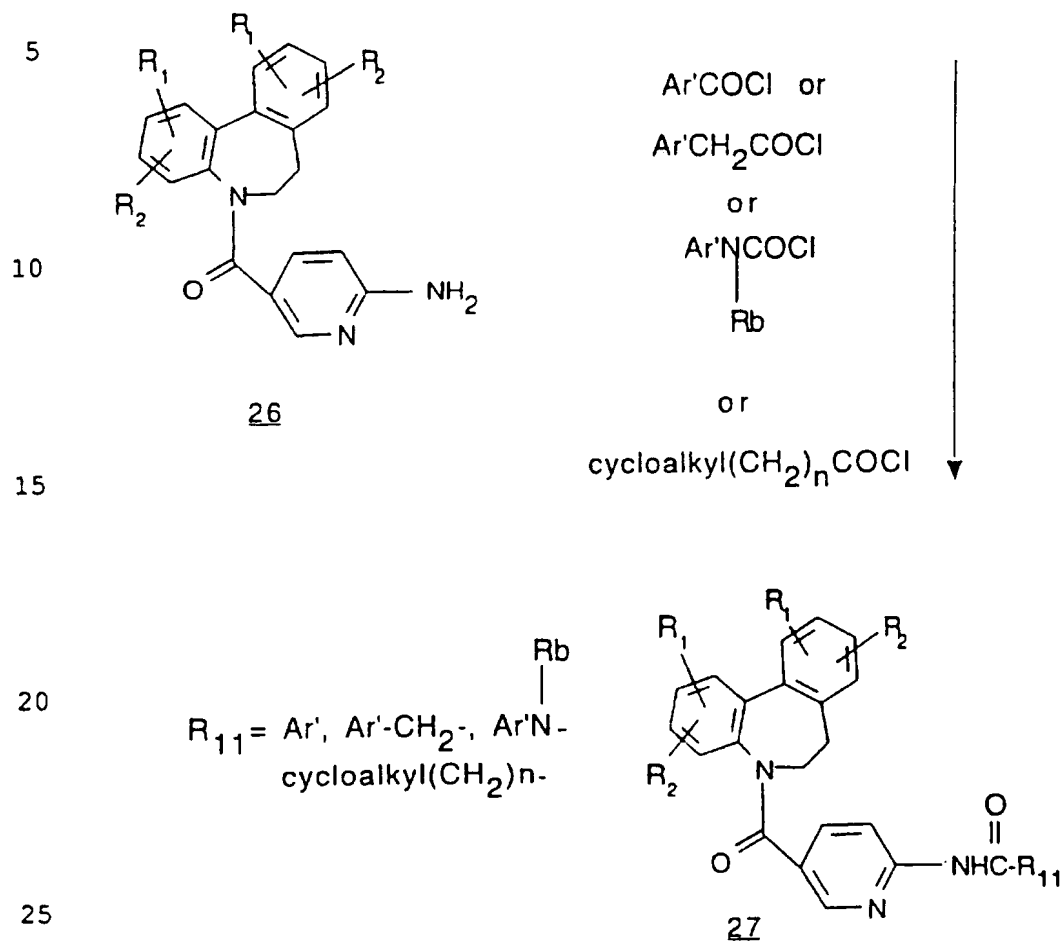
Scheme 6



Scheme 7

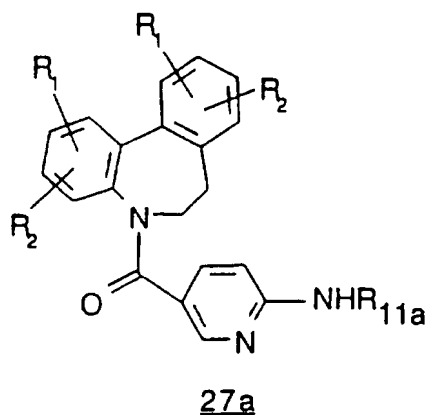
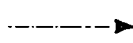


Scheme 7 (Continued)

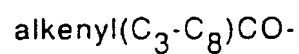
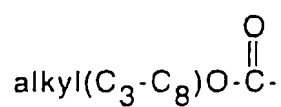


Scheme 7 (Continued)

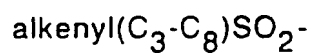
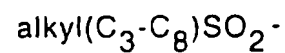
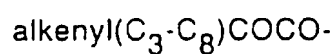
5

26+ 7a

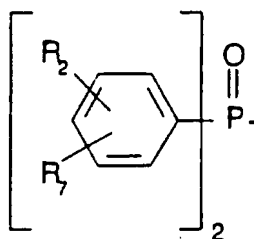
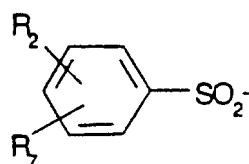
10

 $R_{11a} = \text{alkyl}(C_3-C_8)CO-$


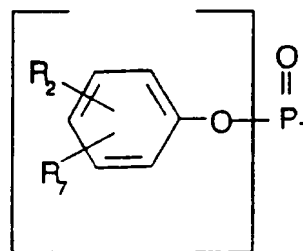
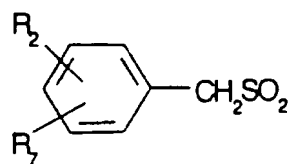
15



20

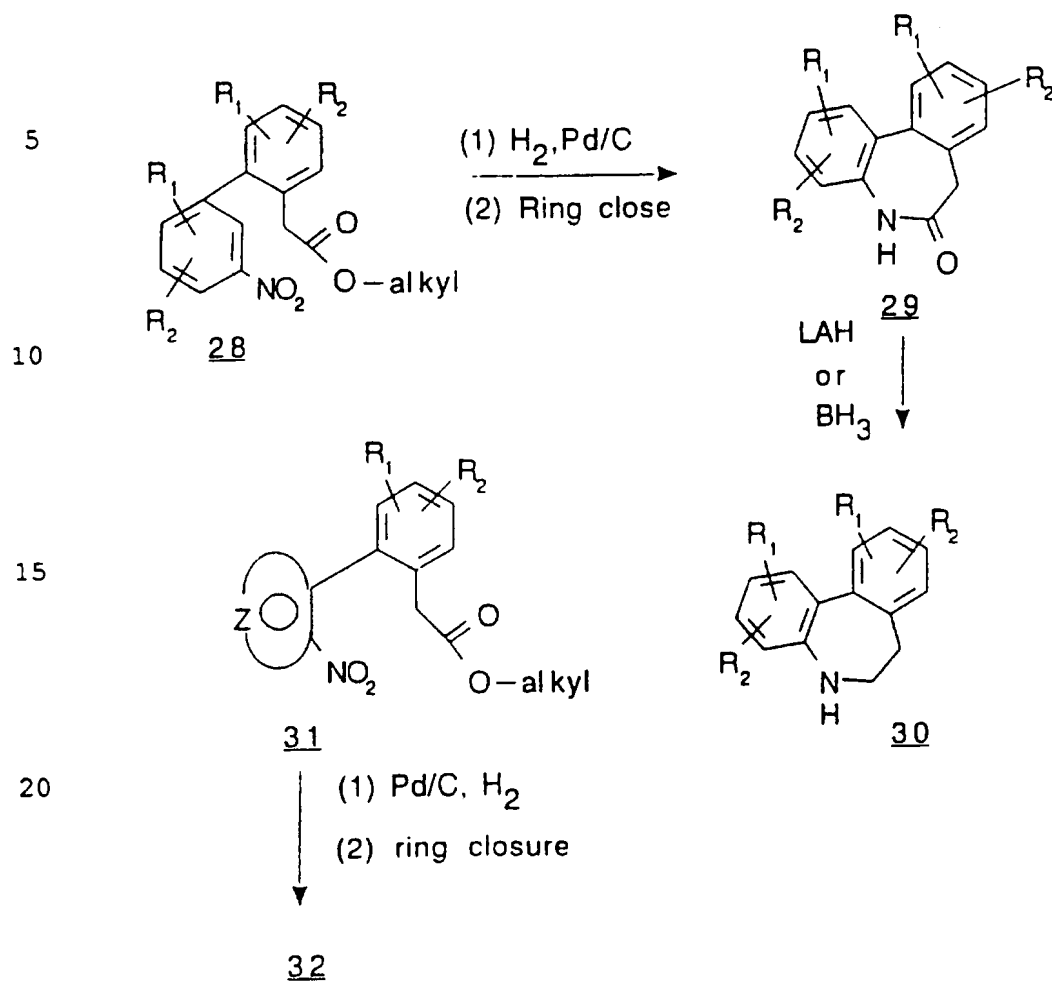


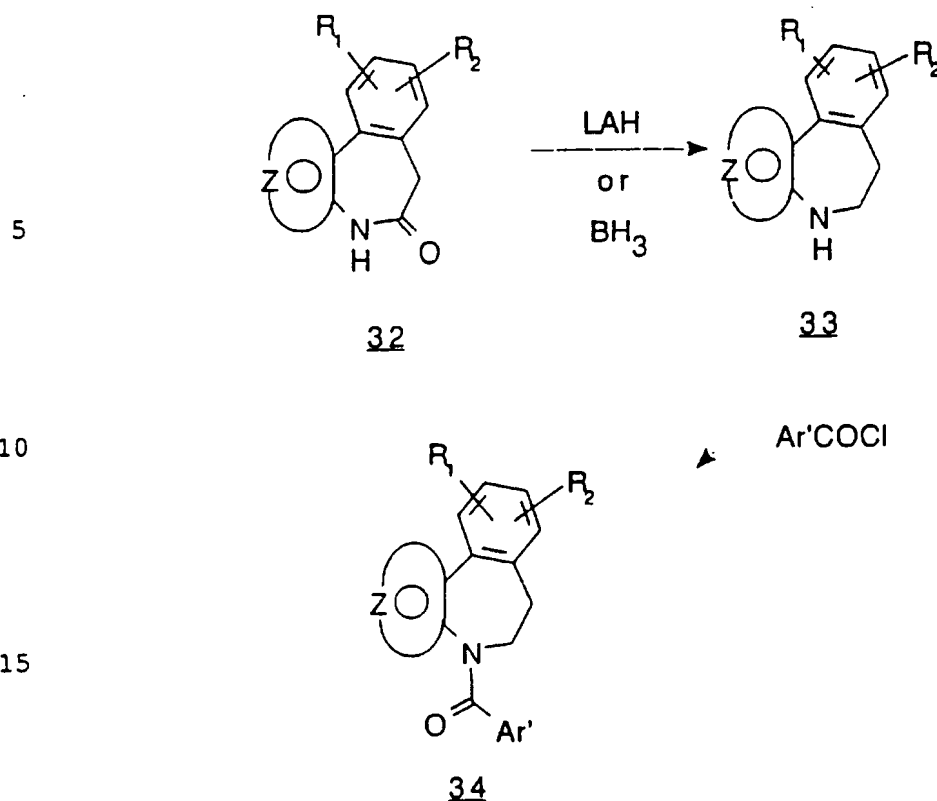
25



30

Scheme 7 (Continued)





20 Tricyclic intermediates 42 for the synthesis of selected vasopressin antagonists of this invention wherein Y in Formula I is -CH₂- and m is one, may be prepared as shown in Scheme 8. Suitable 1-nitro-2-chloro or 1-nitro-2-bromo heterocycles 35 undergo

25 halogen exchange when reacted with an alkyl lithium reagent such as t-butyllithium, s-butyllithium or n-butyllithium to give intermediates 37 which react with anhydrides of Formula 38. R₁₂ is tert-butyl, secondary butyl, n-butyl, 2,6-dimethylpiperidine or a hindered

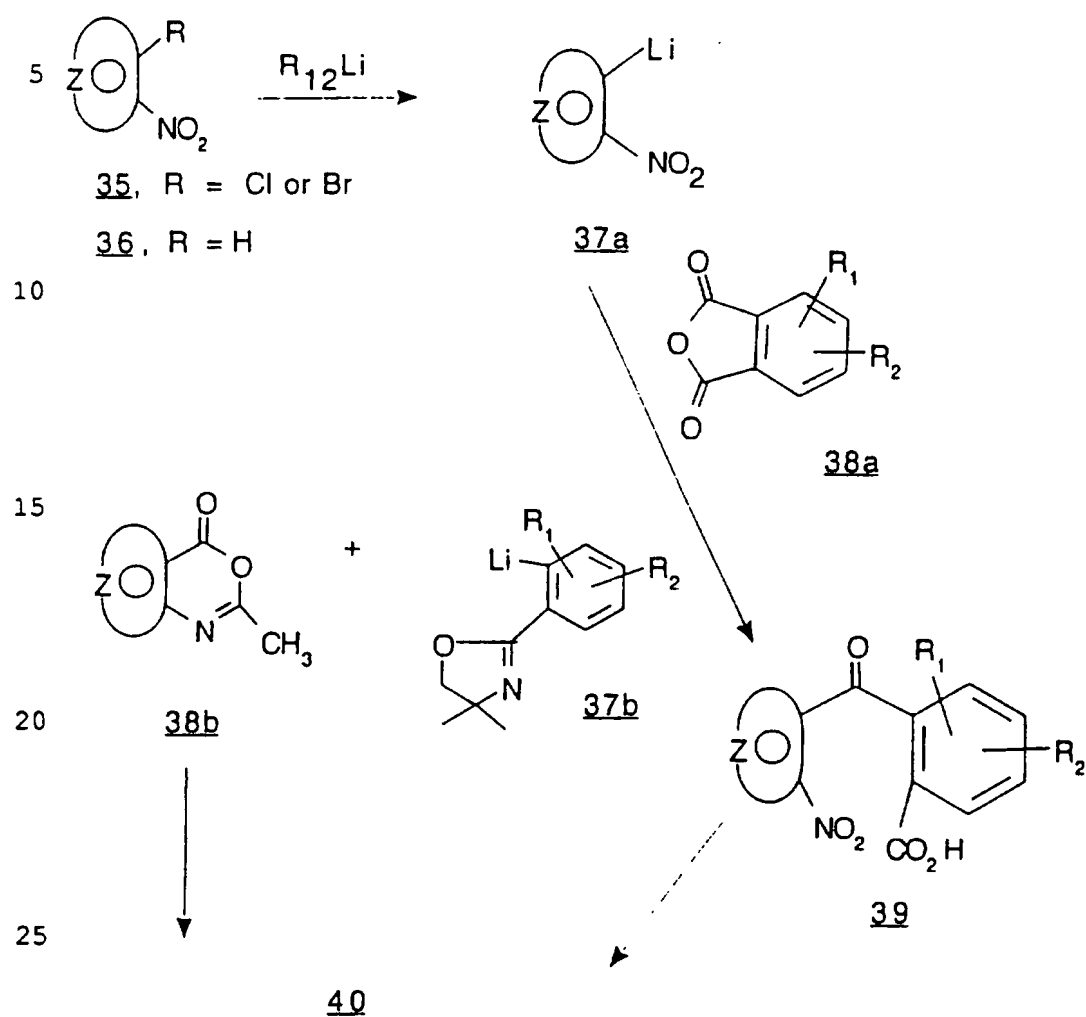
30 non-nucleophilic dialkylamine. The nitro products 39 are reduced with hydrogen and a suitable catalyst or chemically reduced (Zn-acetic acid, TiCl₃ etc.) to the amino intermediates 40. Ring closure to the cyclic lactams 41 is conveniently carried out by heating in

35 xylene or an inert solvent at 100°C to 200°C. The

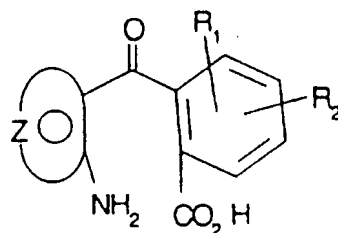
cyclic lactams of structure type 41 are readily reduced by borane in tetrahydrofuran, borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran or lithium aluminum hydride in a suitable solvent such as dioxane to give the tricyclic compounds 42.

5
10
Alternatively phenyllithium derivatives 37b, which are prepared by lithiation of protected benzaldehyde derivatives or by lithiation of 2-chloro or 2-bromo protected benzaldehyde derivatives, are reacted with derivatives 38b wherein Z is as previously defined. Derivatives 38b are prepared by standard procedures such as ring closure of 1-amino-2-carboxy heteroaromatic compounds or 1-amino-2-benzoic acid derivatives, with acetic anhydride (Scheme 8).

Scheme 8

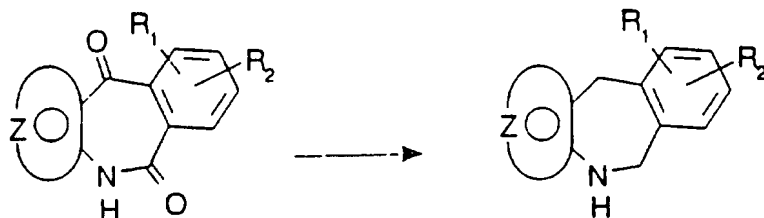


5

40

10

15

4142

20

25

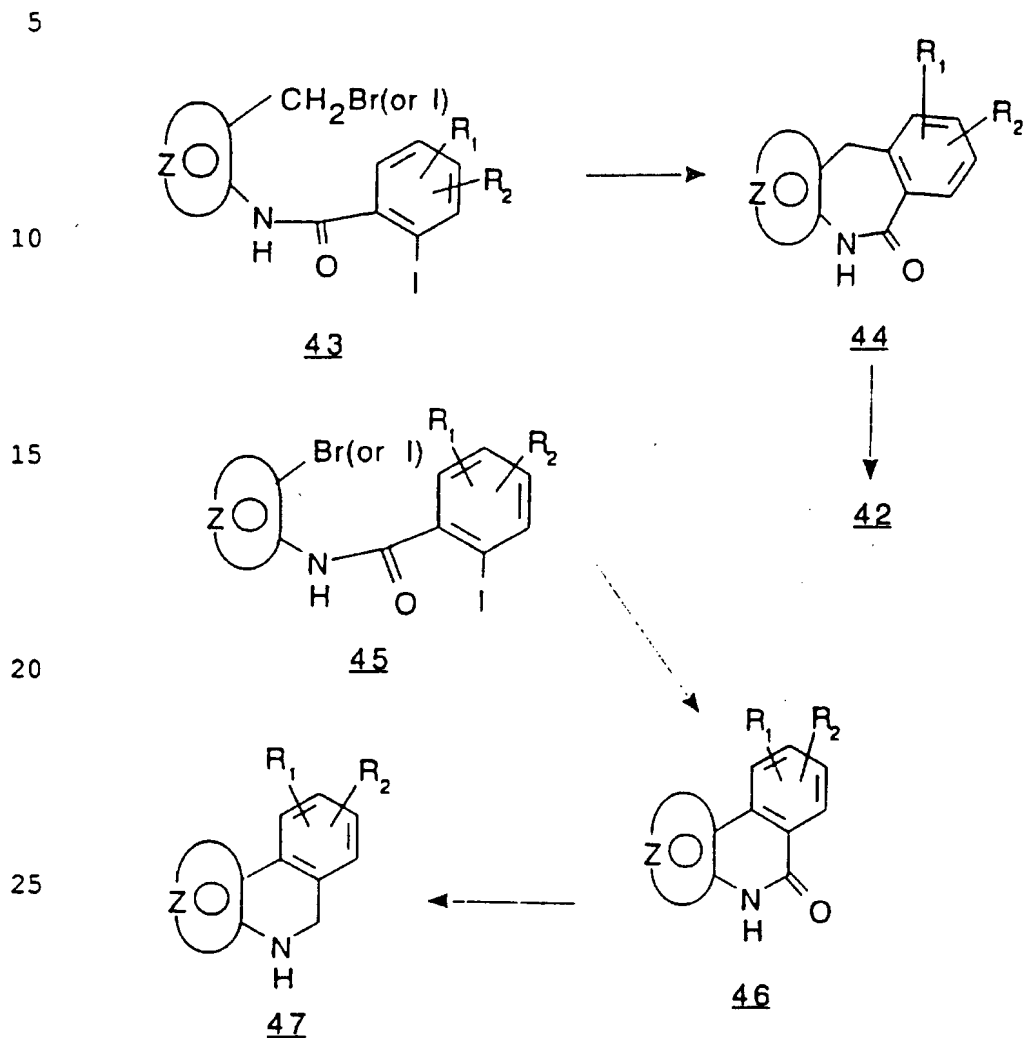
30

35

Alternatively, as shown in Scheme 9, some of the tricyclic derivatives of structural type 42 may be prepared by "palladium" type coupling or "copper" induced coupling of halogenated derivatives 43 to give tricyclic lactams 44. Reduction of the lactam carbonyl group gives the intermediates 42. Coupling of halogen derivatives 45 to effect ring closure with activated copper or "palladium" type reagents which induce aryl coupling gives lactams 46. Borane reduction of lactams 46 gives derivatives 47. Ullmann cross couplings of halogenated heterocycles and 2-bromonitrobenzenes and related cross couplings by low valent palladium species such as $[Pd(PPh_3)_4]$ and $PdCl_2(PPh_3)_2$ are known synthetic procedures; N. Shimizu et al., Tetrahedron Lett. 34, 3421 (1993) and references therein; N. M. Ali et al., Tetrahedron, 37, 8117 (1992) and references

therein; J. Stavenuiter et al., *Heterocycles*, **26** 2711 (1987) and references therein.

Scheme 9



Tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-5-ones **51** and the tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2,5-diones **52** are useful compounds for the synthesis of intermediate tricyclic heterocyclic structures **53** and **54** (Scheme 10). The tetrahydrobenzazepin-5-ones **51** and **52** may be formulated to give hydroxymethylene derivatives or reacted with

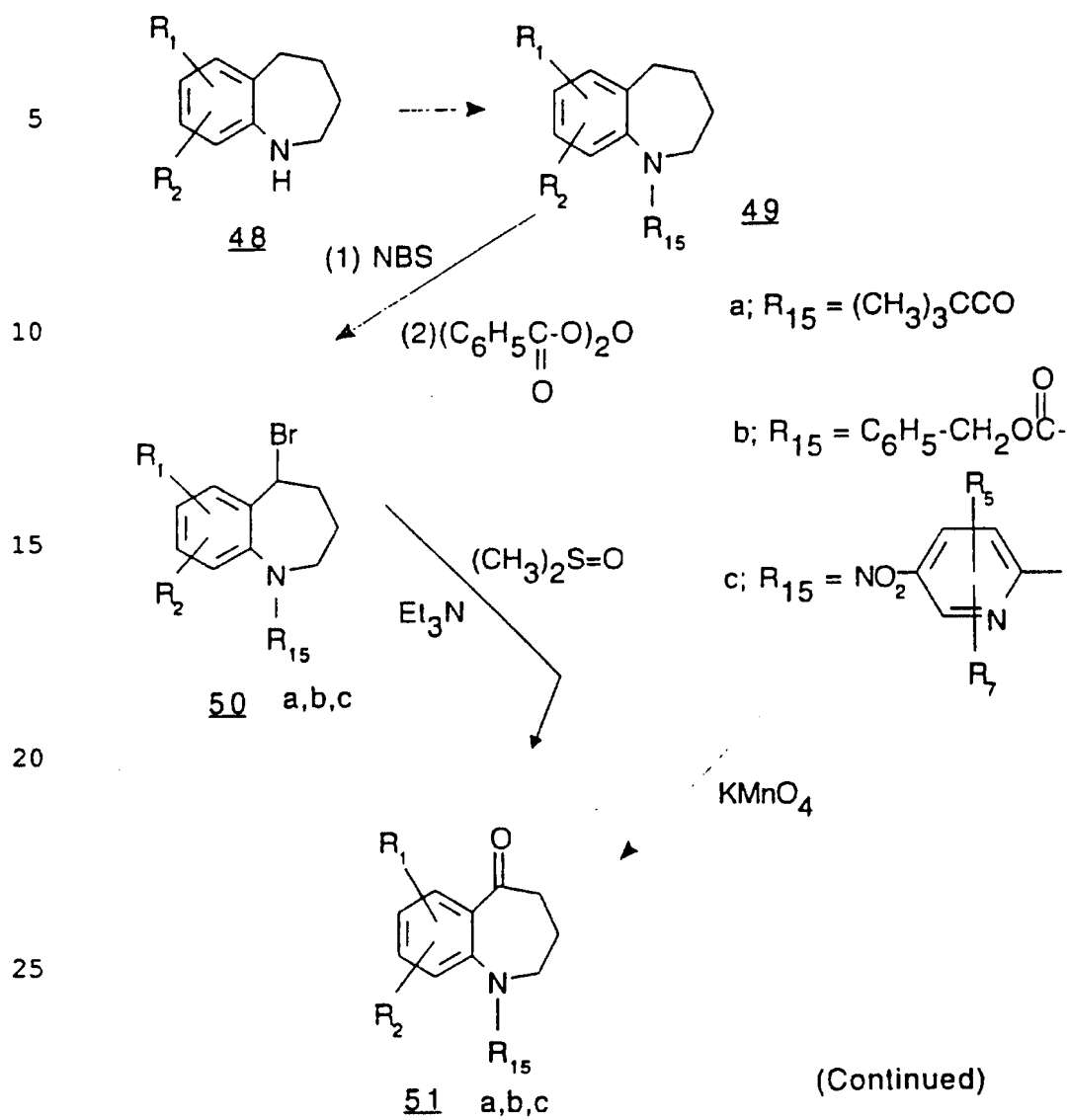
either the Vilsmeier reagent or the N, N-dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal to give the dimethylaminomethylene derivatives. The construction of heterocyclic rings from α -hydroxymethyleneketones by reactions with hydrazine, N-methylhydrazine, hydroxylamine or formamidine to give pyrazoles, N-methylpyrazoles, oxazoles or pyrimidines respectively, is a standard literature procedure. See Vilsmeier formylation - Tetrahedron, 49, 4015-4034 (1993) and references therein and ring formations - J. Heterocyclic Chem., 29, 1214 (1992) and references therein.

Substituted and unsubstituted tetrahydrobenzazepin-2-ones are known compounds which are prepared by reaction of α -tetralones with sodium azide under acidic conditions. [J. Chem. Soc. 456 (1937); Tetrahedron 49, 1807 (1993)] (Schmidt reaction). Reduction of tetrahydro-1H-benzazepin-2-ones gives the tetrahydro-1H-benzazepines 48 which acylation gives compounds 49. Oxidation of N-acyl tetrahydro-1H-benzazepines of type 49 to give the 5-one derivatives is a known oxidative procedure; R. L. Augustine and W. G. Pierson, J. Org. Chem., 34, 1070 (1969).

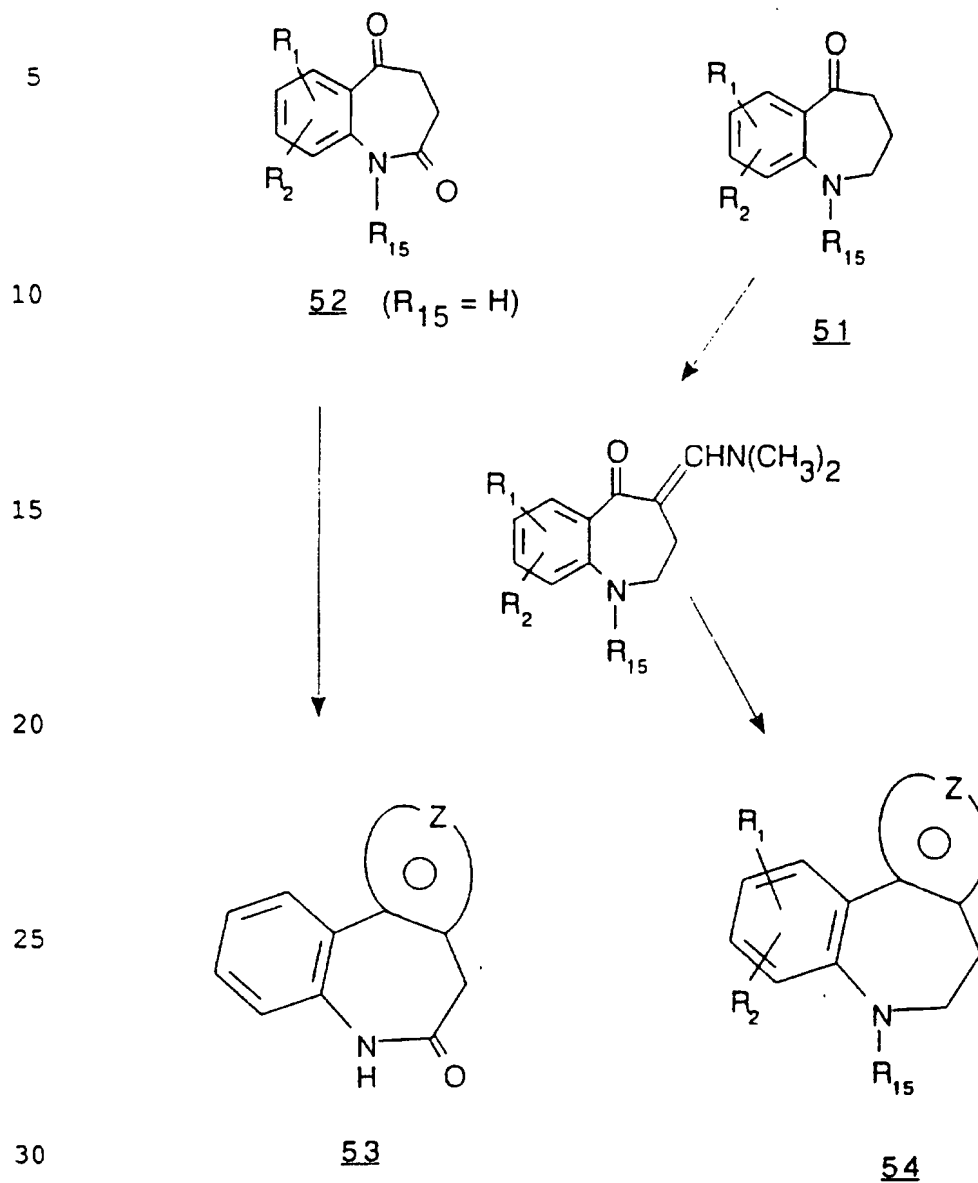
The synthesis of 3,4-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-diones (52; R₁₅=H) has been reported as well as the conversion of 3,4-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-diones to 4-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-3,4-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-diones with N, N-dimethylformamide, dimethylacetal: [W.-Y. Chen and N. W. Gilman, J. Heterocyclic Chem., 20, 663 (1983)]. The preceding reference describes the synthesis of 2-methyl-5,7-dihydropyrimido[5,4-d][1]benzazepin-6(6H)-ones which may be reduced to remove the lactam carbonyl group to give tricyclic derivatives of structural type 54 wherein 2 is a pyrimidine ring.

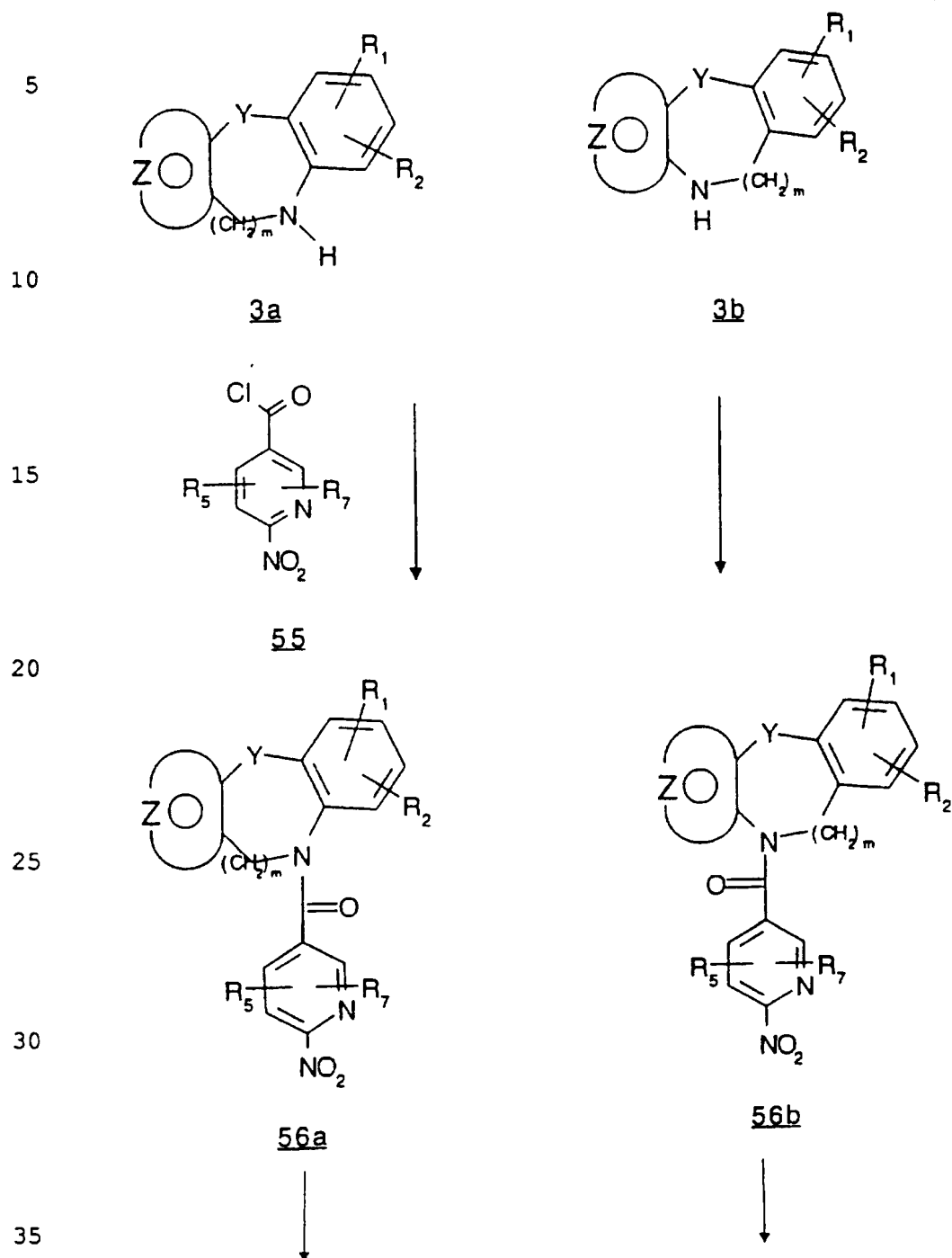
35

Scheme 10

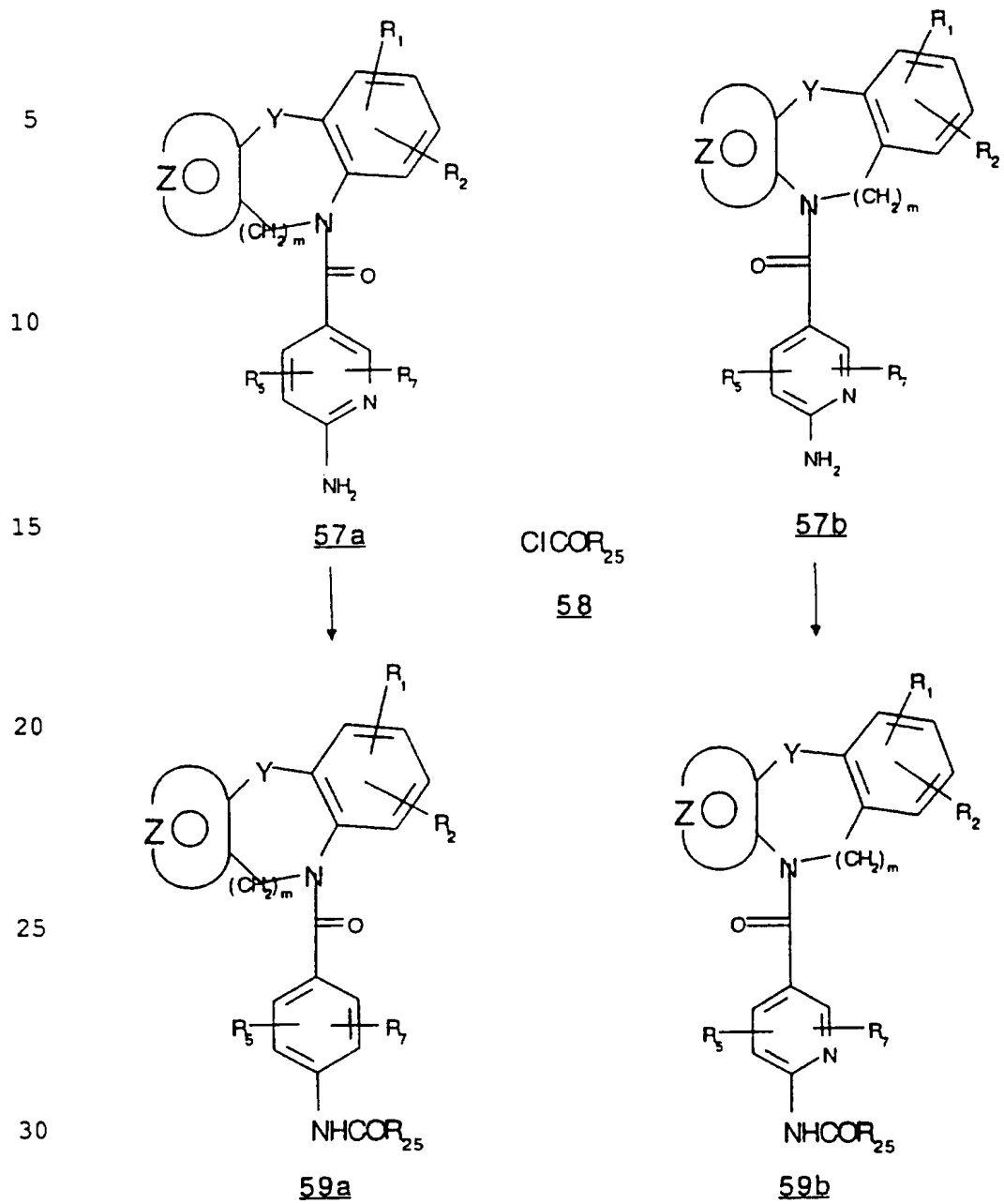


Scheme 10 (Cont'd.)

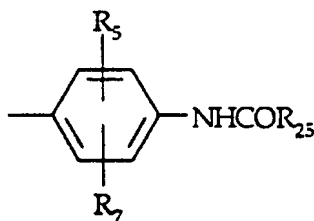


Scheme 11

Scheme 11 (Cont'd.)

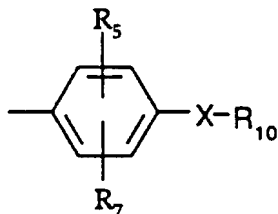


The compounds wherein the aryl group in the R₃ moiety -COAr is



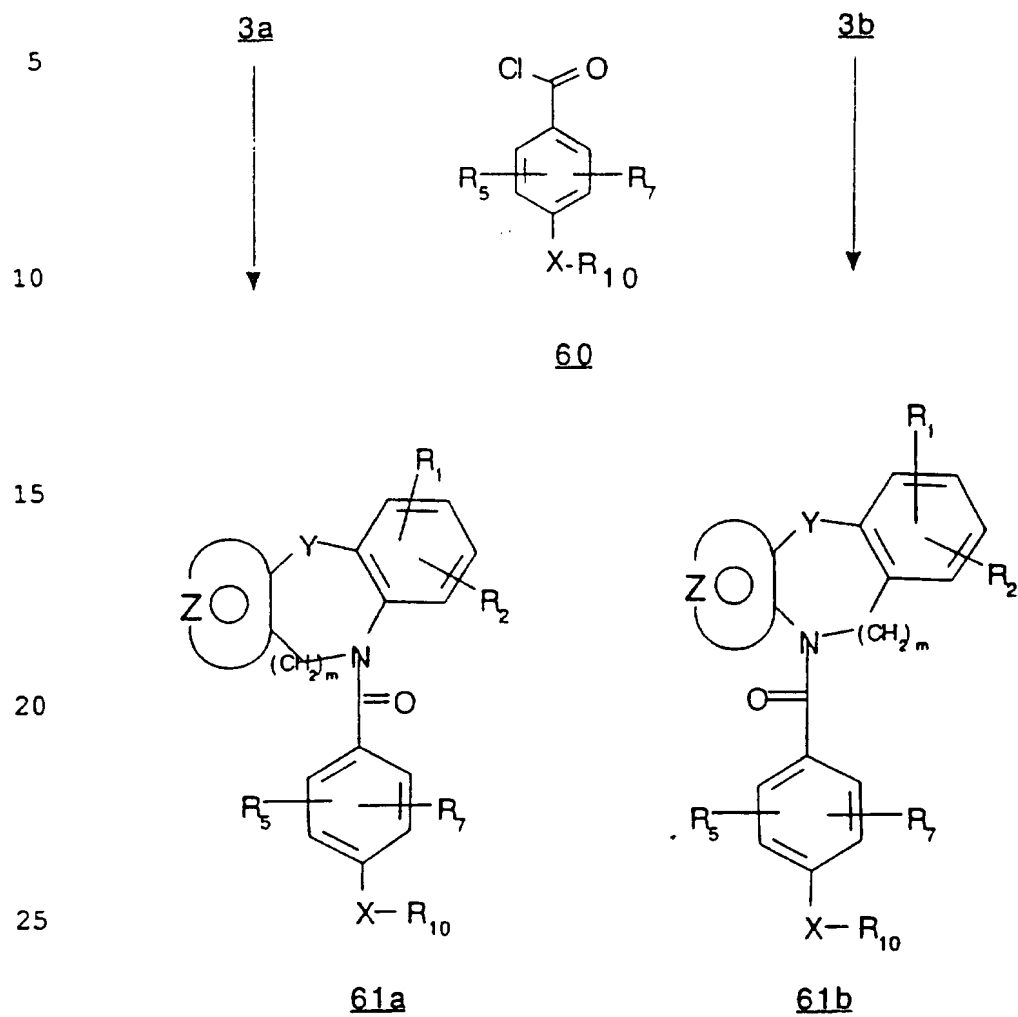
are prepared as shown in Scheme 11. The tircyclic derivatives 3a and 3b are reacted with a substituted or unsubstituted 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride 55 to give the derivatives 56a and 56b. Reductions of the nitro group in derivatives 56a and 56b gives the 4-aminobenzoyl intermedites 57a and 57b which are then reacted with an acid chloride represented by formula 58 to give the products 59a and 59b.

The compounds wherein the aryl group in the R₃ moiety -COAr is

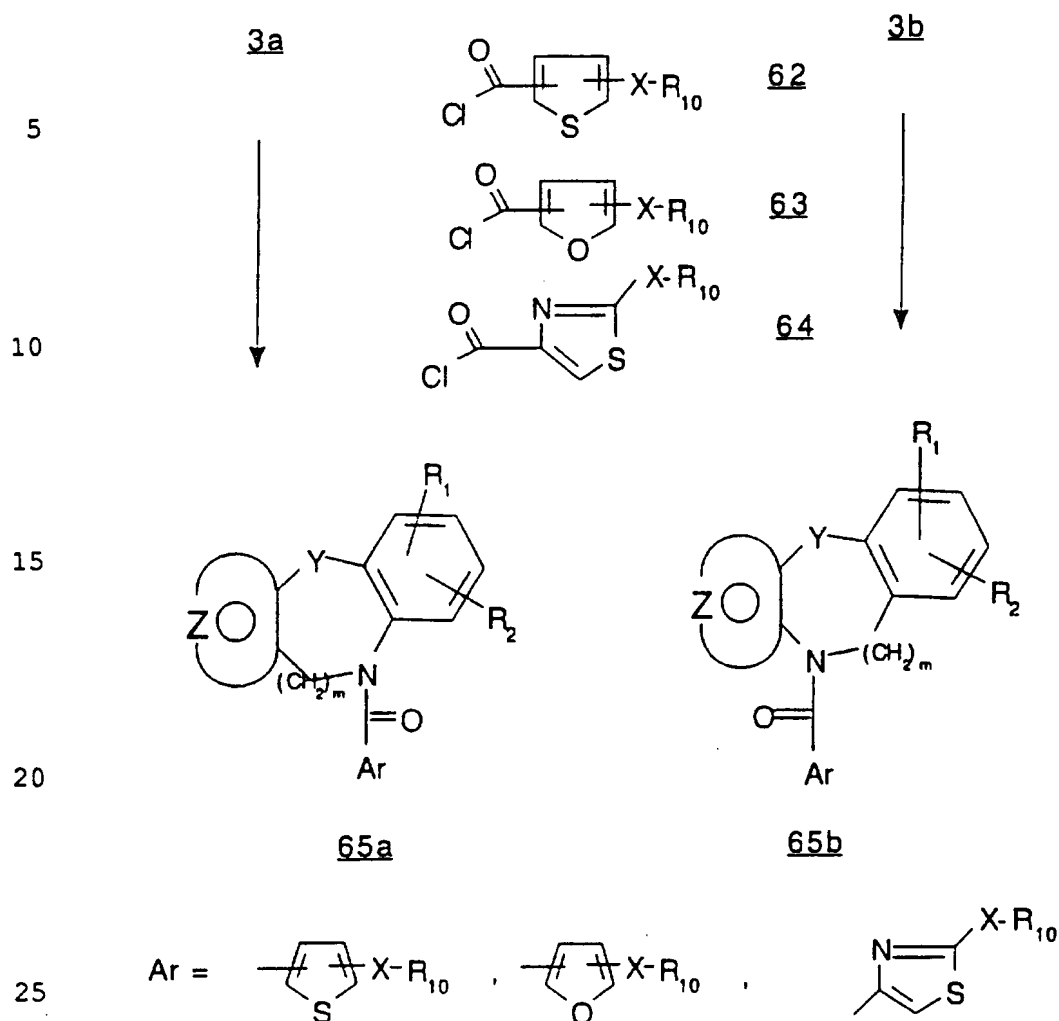


are prepared by reactin of tricyclic azepines 3a and 3b with a substituted benzoyl chloride illustrated by structural formula 60 (Scheme 12) to give the products 61a and 61b. In a similar manner reaction of heteroaroyl chlorides 62, 63, or 64 with the tricyclic azepines 3a and 3b gives the products 65a and 65b wherein the aryl groups are as illustrated in Scheme 13.

Scheme 12



Scheme 13



Reference Example 1

6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine

A mixture of 48.52 g (0.20 mol) of 2-aminobenzophenone-2'-carboxylic acid and 500 ml of xylene is refluxed for 67 hours, cooled to room temperature and filtered. The solid is washed with xylene to give 43.3 g (97.8%) of 5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione as light tan crystals, m.p. 245-248°C. To

4.46 g (0.020 mol) of the preceding compound in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 12 ml (0.12 mol) of a 10 molar solution of boron-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. An additional 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added and the mixture is stirred overnight and then is refluxed (solids dissolve) for 4 hours. The solution is cooled and 15 ml of methanol added dropwise. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, 50 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide is added and the mixture refluxed for 2 hours. The solid is filtered, washed with water, air dried and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed to give 3.25 g (83%) of crystals, m.p. 117-122°C.

Reference Example 2

2-Chloro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione

Chlorine gas is bubbled into a mixture (partial suspension) of 1.0 g (450 mmol) of 5H-dibenz[b,e]-azepine-6,11-dione in 50 ml of glacial acetic acid. The temperature of the mixture rises to 38°C. On standing, as the temperature of the solutions decreases, a white solid precipitates. The mixture is filtered to give 0.40 g of solid (mixture of starting material and product in ratio of 1:8). The filtrate on standing gives 0.10 g of product as crystals, m.p. 289-293°C.

Reference Example 310,11-Dihydro-N,N-dimethyldibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine-2-sulfonamide

To 5.88 g of 10,11-dihydro-N,N-dimethyl-11-oxodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine-2-sulfonamide in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 20 ml of a molar solution of borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred overnight and then refluxed for 2 hours. The mixture is chilled, diluted with 10 ml of methanol and then concentrated, methanol added again and the mixture concentrated. To the mixture is added 20 ml of 2N NaOH and the mixture refluxed for 2 hours. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane, the extract dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. The filtrate is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated to give 4.8 g of crystals. m.p. 99-102°C. Recrystallization from diisopropylether-dichloromethane gives 3.96 g of crystals, m.p. 109-110°C.

Mass Spectrum (FAB) 305(M + H). Anal. Calc'd. for C₁₅H₁₆N₂O₃S: C, 59.2; H, 5.3; N, 9.2; S, 10.6.

Found: C, 57.6; H, 5.2; N, 8.9; S, 10.1.

Reference Example 42-Chloro-5,6-dihydrophenanthridine

To a hot (70°C) solution of 2.62 g (17 mmol) of 6(5H)-phenanthridinone in 120 ml of acetic acid is added chlorine gas for 10 minutes. The solution is allowed to cool to room temperature and the mixture filtered. The crystals are filtered to give 1.35 g of crystals, m.p. 310-318°C.

To the preceding compound (1.57 g) in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 12 ml of a 10 molar solution of boron-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is refluxed for 18 hours, cooled and 15 ml of methanol is added. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum and 50 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide added. The mixture is

refluxed for 2 hours and the solid filtered off and washed with water and air dried to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 5

5 9-Chloro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-6,11-dione

A mixture of 11.15 g of 5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-6,11-dione and 600 ml of glacial acetic acid is heated on a steam bath until the solid dissolves. To the solution (70°C) is added chlorine gas. Chlorine is
10 bubbled throughout the solution until a precipitate begins to form. The mixture is allowed to cool to room temperature and is filtered to give 7.3 g of product, m.p. 290°C to 295°C.

Reference Example 6

15 9-Chloro-6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine

To a mixture of 7.28 g 9-chloro-5H-dibenz-[b,e]azepin-6,11-dione in 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran under argon is added 8.5 ml of 10 molar boron-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred 18 hours at
20 room temperature, 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran added and the mixture refluxed for 3 hours (solids dissolved). The solution is cooled to room temperature and 25 ml of methanol added dropwise. The volatiles are removed under vacuum. To the residue is added 100 ml of 2 N
25 NaOH. The mixture is refluxed overnight and filtered. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is washed with 2 N citric acid, water and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed to give 4.2 g of solid which is triturated with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:2) to
30 give crystals, m.p. 137°C to 141°C.

Reference Example 7

10,11-Dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]thiazepine

To a mixture of 3.3 g of 10,11-dihydro-11-oxodibenz[b,f][1,4]thiazepine in 25 ml of
35 tetrahydrofuran is added 4.0 ml of 10 molar borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is

Reference Example 192-Methyl-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 204-Chloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepine

5

Reference Example 213-Methyl-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 227-Chloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 23

10

8-Chloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 242,4-Dichloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 254,8-Dichloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepine

15

Reference Example 264-Chloro-8-methyl-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-
oxazepineReference Example 274-Methyl-7-chloro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-
oxazepine

20

Reference Example 281-Chloro-4-methyl-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-
oxazepineReference Example 29

25

2-Fluoro-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepineReference Example 30N-(2-Iodophenyl)-2-iodophenylacetamide

A solution of 13.32 g (0.05 mol) of 2-iodophenylacetic acid in 75 ml thionyl chloride is
30 refluxed for 2 hours, and the volatiles removed under
vacuum. Toluene is added (3 times) and the solvent
removed under vacuum after each addition to give 2-iodophenylacetyl chloride as a gum. To the preceding
compound (0.05 mol) in a mixture of 100 ml of toluene-
35 dichloromethane (1:1) is added 11 g (0.05 mol) of 2-iodoaniline and (0.10 mol) of diisopropylethylamine.

- The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the solvent removed. The residue is dissolved in dichloromethane and the solution washed with 1N HCl, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄).
- 5 The solvent is removed and the residue recrystallized from methanol-ether to give 16.0 g of light brown crystals, m.p. 160°-163°C.

Reference Example 31

2-Iodo-N-(2-iodophenyl)benzeneethanamine

- 10 To a suspension of 1.39 g (3 mmol) of 2-iodo-N-(2-iodophenyl)benzeneacetamide in 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran-dichloromethane (1:1) is added 3.75 ml of 2.0 molar borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The solution is stirred 1 hour at room temperature and
- 15 then refluxed for 16 hours. The mixture is cooled and water slowly added dropwise until gas evolution ceases. The volatile are removed under vacuum and the aqueous residue made alkaline with 2N sodium hydroxide. The mixture is extracted with ether (50 ml) and the extract
- 20 is washed with brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filter pad is washed with ether and the filtrate evaporated. The residual solid is washed with isooctane to give 1.20 g of white solid.
- 25 Recrystallization from diethylether/hexane gives white crystals.

Reference Example 32

N-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-N-(2-iodophenyl)-2-iodobenzeneethylamine

- 30 To a solution of 0.90 g of 2-iodo-N-(2-iodophenyl)benzeneethanamine in 4 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 0.41 g of triethylamine, and 0.57 g of 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and the solvent removed under
- 35 vacuum. The residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate-dichloromethane (5:1) and the solution washed with 1N

HCl, saturated NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated and the residual solid triturated with diethyl ether and hexane to give 1.10 g of product as a white solid.

Reference Example 33

2,4-Dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-dione

To a solution of 225 ml of glacial acid and 8.5 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid is added 49.54 g (0.30 mol) of 2'-nitroacetophenone and 47.02 g (0.50 mol) of glyoxylic acid (hydrated). The mixture is heated at 100°C for 16 hours. The mixture is cooled and poured over crushed ice. After the ice melts, the mixture is filtered and the solid washed with cold water. The solid is dried and recrystallized from dichloromethane-hexane to give 20.1 g of 3-(2-nitrobenzoyl)acrylic acid as white crystals, m.p. 153-158°C. A solution of the preceding compound (9.0 g) in 80 ml of ethanol and 1.6 g of palladium-on-carbon is hydrogenated in a Parr hydrogenator under 30 pounds per square inch of hydrogen for 20 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the solvent is removed. The residue (7.0 g) is chromatographed on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:1) as solvent to give 4.0 g of 3-(2-aminobenzoyl)propionic acid as an orange solid, m.p. 103°-107°C. A 0.50 g sample of the preceding compound, 0.36 ml of triethylamine and 0.43 ml of diethoxyphosphinyl cyanide in 20 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 5 days. The solvent is removed, ethyl acetate is added and the mixture washed with water, 2 N citric acid, 1M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue purified by chromatography over silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give 0.190 g of light brown crystals, m.p. 168°-170°C.

Reference Example 344-[(Dimethylamino)methylene]-3,4-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-dione

A mixture of 0.250 g (1.43 mmol) of 3,4-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-2,5-dione and 5.5 ml (4.93 g, 41.5 mmol) of N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylacetal is heated at 90°C for 1.5 hour. The mixture is cooled, diluted with diethyl ether and filtered. The solid is washed well with diethyl ether and dried to give 0.26 g of tan crystals, m.p. 203°-205°C.

Reference Example 352-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-5H-pyrimido[5,4-d][1]benzazepine

To a solution of 0.308 g (3.26 mmol) of acetamidine hydrochloride in 15 ml of methanol under argon is added 0.176 g of (3.26 mmol) of sodium methoxide and the mixture stirred for 5 minutes. To the mixture is added 0.50 g (2.17 mmol) of 4-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-5H-1-benzazepine-2,5-dione and the mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture (containing thick precipitate) is diluted with 3 ml of methanol, chilled and filtered. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness. The residue and original solid are combined and chloroform added. The mixture is washed with water, the organic layer is treated with activated carbon and then filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is evaporated to give 0.41 g of crystals, m.p. 257°-258°C.

The preceding compound is heated with 5 equivalents of lithium hydride in dioxane for 24 hours to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 365,6-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzothiazepine

To a suspension of 11.67 g of 2-thiobenzoic acid in a mixture of 32 ml of ethanol and 11 ml of water is added portion wise 12.72 g of solid sodium

bicarbonate. After the complete addition, the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes and 10.0 g of 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine added portionwise. The mixture is refluxed for 2 hours, cooled and then concentrated in vacuo. The residual aqueous solution is diluted with 15 ml of water, acidified with 2N HCl and extracted twice with 250 ml of ethyl acetate. The extract is concentrated under vacuum to give a yellow solid residue. The residue is dissolved in a minimum of ethyl acetate by heating on a steam bath. The solution is cooled overnight and filtered to give 2.5 g of starting material. The filtrate is concentrated, chilled and filtered to give 12.5 g of 2-(3-nitro-2-pyridinylthio)benzoic acid as a yellow solid. The preceding compound (5.0 g) and 0.75 g of Pd/C in 60 ml of ethanol is shaken in a Parr hydrogenator under 45 psi of hydrogen for 18 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with 200 ml of dichloromethane. The combined filtrate is evaporated in vacuo to give a solid. The solid is triturated with ethanol and filtered to give 3.6 g of yellow solid. This solid (3.0 g) is again hydrogenated with Pd/C (0.50 g) in 50 ml of ethanol and 30 ml of acetic acid under 45 psi of hydrogen for 18 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with methanol. The combined filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 1.6 g of solid. This solid in 25 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide is again reduced with 0.80 g of Pd/C under 45 psi of hydrogen to give 0.57 g of solid. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.28 g of 2-(3-amino-2-pyridinylthio)benzoic acid. The preceding compound (0.20 g) is heated in 2-hydroxypyridine at 170°C to give 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzothiazepine as a yellow solid. The preceding compound is reacted with borane-dimethylsulfide as

described for Reference Example 3 to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 37

2-Nitro-2'-carboxy-diphenylamine

5 A stirred solid mixture of 13.7 g of anthranilic acid, 20.2 g of *o*-bromonitrobenzene, 13.8 g of anhydrous potassium carbonate and 0.1 g of copper metal is heated at 200°C in an oil bath. The reaction mixture is heated for 2 hours, cooled and the solid
10 washed with ether (3 X 100 ml). The solid is dissolved in hot water and filtered. The filtrate is acidified with 40 ml of HCl and the resulting solid is collected and dried to give 20.5 g of the desired product as a solid, m.p. 262-265°C.

15 Reference Example 38

2-Amino-2'-carboxy-diphenylamine

A solution of 7.3 g of 2-nitro-2'-carboxy-diphenylamine in 50 ml of methanol containing 10% palladium-on-carbon is hydrogenated under 42 pounds of
20 pressure for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth. The filtrate is evaporated to dryness in vacuo to give 6.6 g of the desired product as a solid, m.p. 72-75°C.

Reference Example 39

25 5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine-11-one

A mixture of 6.6 g of 2-amino-2'-carboxydiphenylamine in 300 ml of xylene is heated at reflux for 20 hours. The xylene is evaporated in vacuo
30 to a residue which is evaporated from 210 ml of toluene in vacuo to a residue which is evaporated from 50 ml of chloroform to give a residue. The residue is dissolved in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran and added to 400 ml of ice-cold hexane. The resulting solid is collected, to give 4.3 g of the desired product as a solid, m.p. 121-123°C.

Reference Example 405,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine

To a stirred solution of 4.3 g of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-11-one in 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran, under nitrogen and cooled to 0°C is added 4.0 ml of a 10 molar solution of dimethyl sulfide-borane complex in tetrahydrofuran. The ice bath is removed after 30 minutes and the reaction mixture stirred at room for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled in an ice bath and 30 ml of anhydrous methanol added dropwise and evaporated to dryness in vacuo. Another 30 ml of methanol is added and evaporated to a residue. The residue is quenched with 30 ml of 40% sodium hydroxide followed by heating at 110°C for 45 minutes and cooling to room temperature. The reaction mixture is diluted with 200 ml of water and extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 100ml). The combined extracts are washed with 1N HCl, water and 0.5 N NaOH. The organic layer is dried and evaporated in vacuo to give 3.2 g of the desired product, m.p. 114-116°C.

Reference Example 415H-Dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione

A mixture of 2.50 g of 2-aminobenzophenone-2'-carboxylic acid in 50 ml of xylene is stirred at reflux for 23 hours. The mixture is filtered to give 1.82 g of the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 422-Chloro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione

A mixture of 1.0 g of 5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione in 50 ml of acetic acid is stirred while chlorine is bubbled into the reaction mixture until saturated. The temperature increases to 38°C. After standing, a precipitate forms and is filtered, washed with hexane and air dried to give 0.62 g of solid which is purified by chromatography to give the desired product as a solid, m.p. 289°-293°C.

Reference Example 432-Chloro-6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine

To a mixture of 7.28 g of 2-chloro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine-6,11-dione in 25 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran, under argon, is added dropwise 8.5 ml of (10 M) boron-dimethyl sulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is heated at reflux for 3 hours and cooled to room temperature. While stirring, 25 ml of methyl alcohol is carefully added, followed by 100 ml of 2 N NaOH. The reaction mixture is heated at reflux for 24 hours and the solid collected. The solid is dissolved in methylene chloride and washed with 2 N citric acid, water and dried (Na₂SO₄). The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 4.16 g of a residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 2.05 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 137-141°C.

Reference Example 442-[2-(Tributylstannyl)-3-thienyl]-1,3-dioxolane

To a stirred solution of 15.6 g (0.10 mol) of 2-(3-thienyl)-1,3-dioxolane in 100 ml of anhydrous ether, n-butyl-lithium (1.48N, in hexane, 74.3 ml) is added dropwise under nitrogen at room temperature. After being refluxed for 15 minutes, the reaction mixture is cooled to -78°C and tri-n-butyltin chloride (34.18 g, 0.105 mol) in 100 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran is added dropwise. After the addition is complete, the mixture is warmed to room temperature and the solvent evaporated. To the oily residue 100 ml of hexane is added, and the resulting precipitate (LiCl) is filtered off. The filtrate is evaporated and the residue distilled at reduced pressure, given 34.16 g (77%) of the desired product.

Reference Example 452-[2-[(2-Nitrophenyl)methyl]-3-thienyl]-1,3-dioxolane

A mixture of 2-[2-(tributylstannyl)-3-thienyl]-1,3-dioxolane (8.8 gms, 20 mmols), 2-nitrobenzyl bromide (4.5 gms, 22 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)-palladium (0) (200 mg) is refluxed in degassed toluene for 16 hours under a nitrogen atmosphere. At the end, the reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and filtered through diatomaceous earth. The toluene is removed by concentrating at reduced pressure and the product isolated by silica gel column chromatography by elution with 30% ethyl acetate: hexane to give 4.5 gms of the desired product as viscous liquid. Mass Spectrum; M^+292

Reference Example 464,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1,4]benzazepine

A stirred solution of 4 gms of 2-[2-[(2-nitrophenyl)methyl]-3-thienyl]-1,3-dioxolane in acetone (50 ml) and acetic acid (90% 50 ml) is heated to 60°C. Zinc dust (10 gms) is slowly added and after the addition, reaction mixture is stirred for 6 hours. At the end, reaction mixture is filtered and the residue washed with acetone and concentrated. The brown residue is extracted with chloroform and washed well with water. The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and filtered and concentrated. The product is isolated by silica gel column chromatography by eluting with 20% ethyl acetate: hexane to give 2.0 g of the desired product as a pale yellow crystalline solid, m.p. 86°C. Mass Spectrum; M^+202 .

Reference Example 474,5-Dihydro-4,4-dimethyl-2-[3-[(2-nitrophenyl)methyl]-2-thienyl]oxazole

To a solution of 4,5-dihydro-4,4-dimethyl-2-(2-thienyl)-oxazole (4.5 gms 25 mmol) in anhydrous ether at -70°C, n-butyl-lithium (2.5 molar solution in hexane,

11 ml) is added drop by drop under N₂ atmosphere. The reaction mixture is stirred at -78°C for 45 minutes and tri-n-butyltin chloride (8.3 gms 25 mmol) in dry ether is added drop by drop. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and quenched with water. The reaction mixture is extracted with ether, washed well with water, dried and concentrated. The product obtained is pure enough for further transformation. The oil product, 4,5-dihydro-4,4-dimethyl-2-[3-(tributylstannyl)-2-thienyl]-oxazole is mixed with 2-nitrobenzyl bromide (5.5 g 25 mmol) in toluene and refluxed in the presence of tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)-palladium (0) 200 mg) for 16 hours. At the end reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and filtered. Toluene is removed under reduced pressure and the product is isolated as brown oil by silica gel column chromatography by eluting it with 30% ethyl acetate:hexane to give 5.7 g of the desired product. Mass Spectrum; M⁺316.

Reference Example 48

9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-c][1,1]benzazepin-10-one

A solution of 4,5-dihydro-4,4-dimethyl-2-[3-[(2-nitrophenyl)methyl]-2-thienyl]oxazole 5 gms is refluxed in acetone/water (3:1 100 ml) containing 1 N HCl (30 ml) for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated and the residue is dissolved in glacial acetic acid (100 ml). The acetic acid is stirred at 70°C and zinc dust (10 gm) is slowly added. Stirring is continued at 70°C for 6 hours. At the end, the reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and filtered. Acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure and the residue is extracted with chloroform. The chloroform layer is dried and concentrated to give 2.9 gms of the desired product as a brown solid. Mass Spectrum: M⁺215.

Reference Example 499,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine

A stirred solution of 2.0 g of 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-10-one and lithium aluminum hydride (500 mg) in tetrahydrofuran is refluxed for 4 hours. At the end, reaction mixture is carefully quenched with ice cold water and extracted with chloroform. The organic layer is washed well with water and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The product is purified by silica gel column chromatography by eluting it with 30% ethyl acetate:hexane to give 1.2 g of the desired product as a bright yellow solid. Mass Spectrum M⁺202.

Reference Example 502-Methylfuran-3-carboxyl chloride

A mixture of 4.0 g of methyl-2-methylfuran-3-carboxylate, 30 ml of 2 N NaOH and 15 ml methanol is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane (discarded). The solid is dissolved in water and the solution acidified with 2 N citric acid to give a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals 1.05 g of crystals of 2-methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid. The preceding compound (0.95 g) and 3 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent is removed, toluene added (20 ml, three times) and the solvent removed to give the product as an oil.

Reference Example 512-(2-(Tributylstannyl)-3-thienyl)-1,3-dioxolane

To a stirred solution of 15.6 g (0.10 mol) of 2-(3-thienyl)-1,3-dioxolane in 100 ml of anhydrous ether, n-butyl-lithium (1.48 N, in hexane, 74.3 ml) is added dropwise under nitrogen at room temperature. After being refluxed for 15 minutes, the reaction mixture is cooled to -78°C and tri-n-butyltin chloride (34.18 g, 0.105 mol) in 100 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran is

added dropwise. After the addition is complete, the mixture is warmed to room temperature and the solvent evaporated. To the oily residue 100 ml of hexane is added, and the resulting precipitate (LiCl) is filtered off. The filtrate is evaporated and the residue distilled at reduced pressure, giving 34.16 g (77%) of the desired product.

Reference Example 52

Methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

Dry methanol (400 ml) is cooled in an ice bath and HCl gas is bubbled into the mixture for 25 minutes. To the MeOH-HCl is added 30 g of 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and then the mixture is stirred and heated at 90°C for 2 hours (all the solid dissolved). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residual solid dissolved in 100 ml of water. The acidic solution is neutralized with saturated sodium bicarbonate (solid separated) and the mixture chilled and filtered to give 30 g of white crystals, m.p. 150°-154°C.

Reference Example 53

6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a mixture of 4.5 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.53 ml of triethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane (cooled in an ice bath) is added 6.38 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours and an additional 3.4 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride added. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture is filtered to give 3.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue triturated with hexane and ethyl acetate to give an additional 9.0 g of bis acylated compound.

A mixture of 12.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, 60 ml of methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of water, cooled and acidified with 1 N HCl. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water to give 6.3 g of the product as a white solid.

As described for Reference Example 53, but substituting the appropriate aryl chloride, heteroaryl chloride, cycloalkanoyl chlorides, phenylacetyl chlorides and related appropriate acid chlorides, the following 6-[(aroylamino)pyridine-3-carboxylic acids, 6-[(hetero-aryl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids and related 6-[(acylated)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids are prepared.

Reference Example 54

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 55

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 56

6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 57

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 58

6-[(3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 59

6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 60

6-[(2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 616-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 626-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
5 acidReference Example 636-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 646-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
10 acidReference Example 656-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
acidReference Example 666-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid
15Reference Example 676-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 686-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
20 acidReference Example 696-[(Tetrahydrofuran-2-yl)aminolpyridine-3-
carboxylic acidReference Example 706-[(Tetrahydrothien-2-yl)aminolpyridine-3-
25 carboxylic acidReference Example 716-[(Cyclohexyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acidReference Example 726-[(cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
30 acidReference Example 736-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-
carboxylic acid

Reference Example 74

6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 75

5 6-[(cyclopentylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 76

6-[(cyclohexylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 77

10 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 78

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 79

15 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 288-290°C

Example 80

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

20 Reference Example 81

6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 82

25 6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 83

6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 84

6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

30 Reference Example 85

6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 86

6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

35 Reference Example 87

6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 88

6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acid

Reference Example 89

5 6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acid

Reference Example 90

6-[(2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminopyridine-3-
carboxylic acid

10 Reference Example 91

6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 92

6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 93

15 6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 94

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminopyridine-
3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 95

20 6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 96

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic
acid

Reference Example 97

25 6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic
acid

Reference Example 98

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic
acid

30 Reference Example 99

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminopyridine-
3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 1006-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

A mixture of 6.2 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methyl-
5 benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 23 ml of
thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. An additional
12 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture
refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture is concentrated to
dryness under vacuum and 30 ml of toluene added to the
10 residue. The toluene is removed under vacuum and the
process (add toluene and remove) is repeated to give 7.7
g of crude product as a solid.

As described for Reference Example 100, the
following 6-(acyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides
15 are prepared.

Reference Example 1016-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 102

20 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 1036-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

25 Reference Example 104

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 105

30 6-[(3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 1066-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chlorideReference Example 107

35 6-[(2-Chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride,
white crystals

Reference Example 1086-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chlorideReference Example 1096-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
5 chlorideReference Example 1106-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 11110 6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 1126-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride15 Reference Example 1136-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 1146-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride20 Reference Example 1156-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 1166-[(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
25 carbonyl chlorideReference Example 1176-[(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-
carbonyl chlorideReference Example 11830 6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chlorideReference Example 1196-[(Cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

- Reference Example 120
6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- Reference Example 121
5 6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- Reference Example 122
6-[(Cyclopentylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- 10 Reference Example 123
6-[(Cyclohexylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride
Reference Example 124
6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- 15 Reference Example 125
6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- Reference Example 126
6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
20 chloride
- Reference Example 127
6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride
- Reference Example 128
25 6-[(2-Methyl-5-fluorobenzeneacetyl)aminopyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride
- Reference Example 129
6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride
- 30 Reference Example 130
6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminopyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride
- Reference Example 131
6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
35 chloride

Reference Example 132

6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 133

5 6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 134

6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

10 Reference Example 135

6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 136

6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

15 Reference Example 137

6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 138

20 6-[(2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 139

6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 140

25 6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 141

6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

30 Reference Example 142

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-
3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 143

35 6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 144

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

Reference Example 145

5 6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

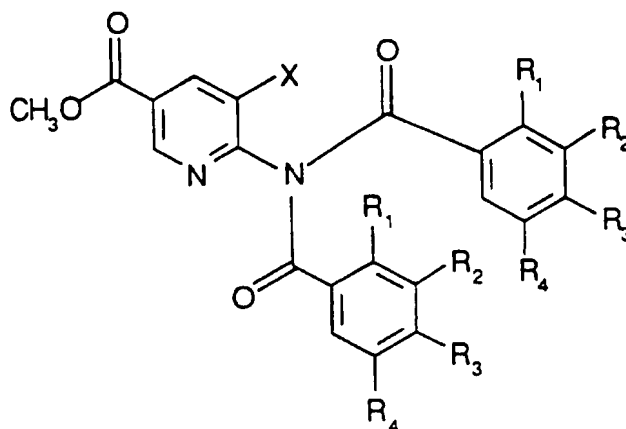
Reference Example 146

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

10 Reference Example 147

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminopyridine-
3-carbonyl chloride

As described for Reference Example 53, the
following bis acylated products (Table A) are prepared
15 and purified by silica gel chromatography. These
compounds are then hydrolysed to the acids (Table B) as
described in Reference Example 53.

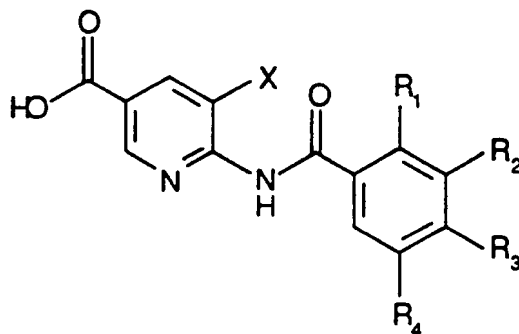
Table A

20

Ref. Ex No.	R ₁	R ₂	R ₃	R ₄	X	M ⁺
148	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	388
149	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	424
150	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	426
151	H	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	H	540
152	Cl	H	H	H	H	430
153	F	H	F	H	H	396
154	Br	H	H	H	H	520
155	Cl	H	F	H	H	412
156	Ph	H	H	H	H	512
157	Cl	H	H	Br	H	474
158	CH ₃	H	H	F	Br	
159	CH ₃	H	H	H	Br	468

M⁺ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum

Table B



Ref. Ex No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	X	M ⁺
160	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	256
161	CH ₃	H	H	F	H	274
162	CH ₃	F	H	H	H	274
163	H	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	OCH ₃	H	332
164	Cl	H	H	H	H	276
165	F	H	F	H	H	278
166	Br	H	H	H	H	322
167	Cl	H	F	H	H	294
168	Ph	H	H	H	H	318
169	Cl	H	H	Br	H	356
170	CH ₃	H	H	F	Cl	
171	CH ₃	H	H	H	Br	336

M⁺ is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum.

Reference Example 172

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a stirred solution of 6-aminonicotinic acid (13.8 g, 0.1 mole) in glacial acetic acid (100 ml), bromine (16 g, 5 ml, 0.1 mole) in acetic acid (20 ml) is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred for 8 hours at room temperature and the acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure. The yellow solid residue is dissolved in water and carefully neutralized with 30% NH₄OH. The separated solid is filtered and washed with water to give 18 g of solid; mass spectrum: 218 (M⁺).

Reference Example 173

Methyl 6-amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylate

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid (10 g, 50 mmol) is dissolved in saturated methanolic HCl (100 ml) and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent, methanol, is re-moved under reduced pressure and the residue is dis-solved in ice cold water. The aqueous

solution is neutralized with 0.1 N NaOH and the solid which separates is filtered; washed well with water and air dried to yield 10 g of product as a solid: mass spectrum 231 (M^+).

5 Reference Example 174

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic
acid

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 5.0 g methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate, 12.6 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 50 ml each of 1 M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is chromatographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 8.6 g of solid. This solid, mainly methyl 6-[[bis(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)]-amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH added to the solution. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the mixture concentrated under vacuum. Water (25 ml) is added and the mixture is stirred and acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The mixture is chilled and the solid filtered and washed with water to give 5.9 g of off-white solid.

Reference Example 175

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl) aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl
chloride

A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzene-
35 acetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of
thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then con-

centrated to dryness under vacuum. To the residue is added 20 ml of toluene and the solvent removed under vacuum. The addition and removal of toluene is repeated and the residual solid dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 5.3 g of dark brown solid.

Reference Example 176

[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-Biphenylcarbonyl chloride

A mixture of 5.6 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid and 29 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 0.5 hour and the volatiles removed under vacuum. Toluene (40 ml) is added (twice) and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 6.8 g of a yellow oil.

Reference Example 177

Methyl 6-[[bis[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]]aminolpyridine-3-carboxylate

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 2.64 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.5 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 30 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added 6.8 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature 2 days and then diluted with 120 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 50 ml each of 1 M NaHCO₃ and brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 6.2 g of white crystals, m.p. 180-188°C.

Reference Example 178

6-[[[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylcarbonyl]]aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a chilled (0°C) mixture of 6.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylcarbonyl]]aminolpyridine-3-carboxylate in 40 ml of methanol and 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added slowly 18 ml of 2 N NaOH. The

mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and brought to pH 5 with glacial acetic acid. The mixture is concentrated, acidified to pH 2-3 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate. The extract is
5 washed with 50 ml of brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residual white solid is triturated with 15 ml of ethyl acetate to give 3.35 g of white crystals, m.p. 215-217°C.

Reference Example 179

10 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 1.9 g of 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 9 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. Toluene (15 ml) is
15 added (twice) to the residue and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 2.1 g of a light brown oil.

Reference Example 180

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

20 To a chilled (0°C) solution of 5.0 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 12.6 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added a solution of 9.7 ml of cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is
25 stirred at room temperature overnight and diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 60 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 60 ml of brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate
30 concentrated under vacuum to give 12.8 g of a solid.

The above solid (12.0 g) in a mixture of 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) is chilled (0°C) and 62 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, neutralized
35 with 10 ml of glacial acetic acid and concentrated under vacuum. The mixture (containing solid) is acidified to

pH 1 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and twice with 100 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml of brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated to a white solid. Trituration
5 with hexane gives 6.5 g of product as a white solid.

Reference Example 181

Methyl 2-[(4-ethoxy-oxobutyl)amino]benzoate

A mixture of 19.2 g of methyl 2-aminobenzoate and 9.6 g of ethyl g-bromobutyrate is heated at 80-85°C
10 for 24 hours, cooled to room temperature and filtered. The solid is washed with CH₂Cl₂ and the filtrate washed with 1NHCl, H₂O, 1NNaHCO₃ and brine. The solvent is removed to give an oil. The oil is distilled and the fraction boiling at 45-75°C and 130-160°C were collected
15 and discarded. The residue is the product (55.4 g of oil)

Reference Example 182

Methyl 2-[N-(4-ethoxy-4-oxobutyl)-N-(2-methylphenylsulfonyl)amino]benzoate

A mixture of 2.65 g of methyl 2-[(4-ethoxy-4-oxobutyl)amino]benzoate, 2.0 g of 2-methylphenylsulfonyl chloride and pyridine is heated on a steam bath for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under a vacuum (remove pyridine) and 1N HCl added. The mixture is
25 extracted with dichloromethane and the extract washed with 1NHCl, H₂O, 1 M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrons magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated to give 3.8 g of solid which is crystallized from ethanol to
30 give crystals, m.p. 100-102°C.

Reference Example 183

Methyl and Ethyl 1,2-Dihydro-5-hydroxy-1-[4-(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-3H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate

To a mixture of 0.448 g of potassium tert-butoride in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran; cooled to 0°C is
35 added 0.838 g of methyl 2-[N-(4-ethoxy-4-oxobutyl)-N-(2-

methylphenylsulfonyl)amino]benzoate in 12 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred at 0°C for 4 hours (under argon), poured into water and neutralized with 2N citric acid. The mixture is extracted with
5 dichloromethane and the extract washed with H₂O, brine and dried (Mg SO₄). The extract is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give 0.59 g of product (a mixture of methyl and ethyl esters).

10 Reference Example 184

1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-1-benzazepin-5-one

A 30 g sample of a mixture of methyl and ethyl 1,2-dihydro-5-hydroxy-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-3H-1-
15 benzazepine-4-carboxylate in a mixture of 171 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid and 171 ml of glacial acetic acid is refluxed 24 hours. An additional 170 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid is added and the mixture refluxed for 24 hours. The mixture is
20 concentrated under vacuum to near dryness, diluted with water and the solution brought to pH 8 with saturated NaHCO₃. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extracted washed with H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad
25 of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated to give 12.0 g of a brown oil.

Reference Example 185

4-[(Dimethylamino)methylene]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-1-benzazepin-5-one

30 A mixture of 1.89 g of 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-1-benzazepin-5-one and 2.47 ml of ~~tert~~-butoxy-bis(dimethylamino)methane (Bredericks reagent) in 10 ml of dichloromethane is heated under argon on a steam bath for 16 hours. The
35 mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and the residue dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The solution is filtered

through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with 5% ethyl acetate in CH₂Cl₂. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue (1.96 g) crystallized from CH₂Cl₂-hexane to give 0.85 g of crystals, m.p. 180-185°C. A second crop of crystals (0.85 g) is recovered from the mother liquors and an additional 0.30 g is recovered from washing the pad of hydrous magnesium silicate with ethyl acetate.

Reference Example 186

10 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-6-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]pyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine

A mixture of 1.55 g of 4-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-1-benzazepin-5-one, 0.25 ml of hydrazine and 60 ml of ethanol is refluxed on a steam bath under argon for 2 hours. After standing overnight at room temperature, the solvent is removed under vacuum. The residue is dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and the solution washed with water, brine and dried ((Na₂SO₄)). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated to give 1.4 g of crystals, m.p. 76-79°C.

On a larger scale reaction with 18.29 g of 4-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-5H-1-benzazepin-5-one the product in CH₂Cl₂ is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filter pad washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate is concentrated to give 16.5 g of product (one spot by thin layer chromatography (silica gel) with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2)).

Reference Example 187

1,4,5,6-Tetrahydropyrazolo-[4,3-d][1]benzazepine

A mixture of 1.0 g of 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-6-[(2-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]pyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine in 60 ml of 40% (V/V) H₂SO₄ in glacial acetic acid is heated at 60°C for 12 hours or until the tosyl group is

removed. The mixture is poured into 100 ml ice and water with cooling. Solid NaOH is added portionwise (temperature kept below 30°C) with efficient stirring and the pH brought to 8. The mixture is extracted with
5 ethyl acetate and the extract dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed to give a solid.

Reference Example 188

10,11-Dihydrobenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine

To a slurry of 7.35 g of lithium aluminum
10 hydride 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added in portions 10.0 g of dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-one. An additional 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added and the mixture is refluxed for 6 hours and then stirred at room temperature overnight. To the chilled mixture is added
15 dropwise 7.5 ml of H₂O, 7.5 ml of 15% NaOH and three 7.5 ml portions of H₂O. The mixture is filtered and the filter cake washed with tetrahydrofuran and dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 10.1 g of solid. The solid
20 is dissolved in dichloromethane and the solution filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filter cake is washed with dichloromethane and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give 8.9 g of solid. Crystallization from
25 dichloromethane-hexane gives 7.5 g crystals, m.p. 69-71°C.

Reference Example 189

Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-one

A mixture of 21.4 g of phenyl salicylate,
30 25.71 g 3-amino-2-chloropyridine and 20 ml of 1,2,4-trichlorobenzene is refluxed for 1 hour under argon and the liberated phenol and HCl simultaneously distilled (from the refluxing mixture) and collected in a solution of 1N NaOH. The hot mixture is poured into 200 ml of
35 ethanol and the precipitated solid collected by filtration. The solid is washed with ethanol and dried.

Recrystallization from methanol - DMF (6:1) gives 6.0 g of product, m.p. 268-270°C.

Reference Example 190

5,6-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepine

5 A mixture of 2.8 g of pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]
benzoxazepin-6(5H)-one, 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran and
3 ml of 10M borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran is
stirred at room temperature overnight and then refluxed
for 3 hours. To the mixture is added dropwise under
10 argon, 5 ml of methanol. The solvent is removed under
vacuum and methanol added. The solvent is removed under
vacuum and 12 ml of 2N NaOH added to the residue. The
mixture is refluxed for 2 hours and extracted with ethyl
acetate. The extract is washed with 2N citric acid,
15 H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered
through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the
filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The
residue is chromatographed on a column (2" x 18") of
silica gel (320 g) with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:1) as
20 solvent to give 0.78 g of crystals, m.p. 172-174°C.

Reference Example 191

N-(2-Hydroxyphenyl)-2-chloro-3-pyridinecarboxamide

As described in J. Med. Chem., 37, 519 (1994),
a solution of 1.09 g of 2-aminophenol in 15 ml of
25 tetrahydrofuran is added dropwise to a mixture of 2.1 g
of triethylamine and 2.33 g of 2-chloropyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride hydrochloride in 10 ml of
tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is stirred at room
temperature for one hour under argon and then refluxed
30 for one hour. The solvent is removed under vacuum and
the residue triturated with water. The solid is
filtered off and washed with water to give 1.02 g of
solid. Recrystallization from 2-propanol gives crystals,
m.p. 145-146°C.

Reference Example 192Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-5(6H)one

A mixture of 13.0 g of N-(2-hydroxyphenyl)-2-chloro-3-pyridinecarboxamide and 2.82 g of sodium methoxide in 100 ml of N, N-dimethylformamide is refluxed under argon for 3 hours. Sodium methoxide (0.50 g) is added and the mixture refluxed 2 hours and then stirred at room temperature for 2 days. The solvent is removed under high vacuum and the red-brown residue triturated with cold methanol. The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with chilled methanol to give 5.0 g of white solid, m.p. 250-253°C.

Reference Example 1935,6-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepine

To a stirred slurry of 0.886 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 1.65 g of pyrido[2,3-b][1,5] benzoxazepin-5(6H)-one in portions. The mixture is diluted with 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran and refluxed under argon for 18 hours. To the mixture is added 1 ml of water, 1 ml of 15% NaOH and three one-ml portions of H₂O and the mixture is filtered. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane and the solution passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give crystals, m.p. 125-129°C.

Reference Example 1949,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1,5]benzazepine

To a solution of 9.0 g of 4,5-dihydro-4,4-dimethyl-2-(2-thienyl)oxazole in 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran, cooled to -78°C, is added 20 ml of a 2.5 molar solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane. The mixture is stirred -78°C for 15 minutes and at 0°C for 30 minutes. To the stirred solution is added 6.0 g of 2-methylbenzoxazepine-4-one. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours quenched with ice cold water and extracted with chloroform. The extract is

concentrated to dryness and 100 ml of 40% H₂SO₄ is added. The mixture is refluxed for 4 hours, cooled to room temperature and filtered to give 9,10-dihydro-4,10-dioxo-4H-thieno [2,3-c][1]benzazepine. The solid is washed with water to give 2.5 g of crystals. The solid is dissolved in 100 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran and 1.0 g of lithium aluminum hydride added. The mixture is refluxed for 16 hours, chilled and ice cold water is added dropwise. The mixture after dilution with water is extracted with chloroform-methanol (3:1) and the extract dried (MgSO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed over silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give 1.8 g of solid; Mass spectrum (CI) 202 (M + H).

15

Reference Example 195

Methyl 4-[(1,1'-Biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino-3-methoxybenzoate

A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52 g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 11.06 g of an oil. A 2.16 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is reacted with 1.81 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.30 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 3.20 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 115-117°C.

30

Reference Example 196Methyl 4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoate

- 5 A solution of 2.37 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.49 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride.
- 10 The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 1.1 g of the
- 15 desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 132-134°C. M⁺H=365

Reference Example 1974-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoic Acid

- 20 A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to
- 25 obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 0.1 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 217-219°C

30

Reference Example 1984-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-3-methoxybenzoyl Chloride

- 35 A solution of 2.69 g of 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy benzoic acid in 5 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour

under Argon. The volatiles are removed in vacuo to give a residue which is stirred with hexane to give 2.58 g of crystalline solid, m.p. 121-123°C. M+=361.

5 Reference Example 199

Methyl 4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoate

 A mixture of 10.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 75 ml of methylene chloride and 12.52 g of oxalyl chloride is stirred at room temperature for
10 18 hours. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 11.66 g of an oil. A 7.5 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to a solution of 4.53 g of methyl-4-aminobenzoate and 4.3 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene
15 chloride at 0°C. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added to the
20 filtrate at the boil to give 8.38 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 163-165°C.

Reference Example 200

4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoic Acid

25 A 3.15 g sample of methyl 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate is refluxed for 8 hours in 100 ml of ethyl alcohol and 2.5 ml of 10N sodium hydroxide. The cooled reaction mixture is acidified with [HCl acid] and the desired product collected and dried to give 2.9
30 g of the desired product as a solid m.p. 246-249°C. M+H=318.

Reference Example 201

4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoyl Chloride

35 A mixture of 1.39 g of 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl

chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. Cold hexane is added and the crystalline solid collected and dried to give 1.34 g of the desired product, m.p. 118-120°C.

5

Reference Example 202

2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.74 g of the desired product as an oil. $M^+ = 227$ as methyl ester.

10

Reference Example 203

15 Methyl 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

To 3.03 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 3.12 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 75 ml of methylene chloride is added 5.54 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl chloride and the reactants stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 and the organic layer dried (Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 5.04 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 138-139°C.

20

25

Reference Example 204

Sodium 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate

A mixture of 4.90 g of methyl 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate in 100 ml of absolute ethanol and 3.50 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. The aqueous phase is filtered and the resulting solid collected and dried to give 4.25 g of the desired product m.p. 340-346°C.

30

Reference Example 2054-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

A mixture of 4.0 g sodium 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoate is suspended in water and the pH adjusted to 5 with acetic acid. The solid is collected by filtration and dried at 80°C in vacuo to give 3.75 g of the desired product, 246-247°C. $M^+ = 332$.

10

Reference Example 2064-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoyl Chloride

A mixture of 2.0 g of 4-[[2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 1.53 g of the desired product as an oil. $M^+ = 346$ as methyl ester.

15

Reference Example 207

20 Methyl 4-[[2-(Phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]-2-chloro-
benzoate

A mixture of 5.0 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are evaporated in vacuo to give 5.70 g of an oil. A 2.85 g portion of the above oil in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added to a solution of 50 ml of methylene chloride containing 1.85 g of methyl 4-amino-2-chlorobenzoate and 1.65 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine by stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 and the organic layer dried (Na_2SO_4). The organic layer is passed through hydrous magnesium silicate two times and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 2.96 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 133-135°C. $M^+ = 380$.

25

30

35

Reference Example 208Methyl 4-[[[2-Phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]-3-methoxybenzoate

- 5 A solution of 2.85 g of 2-(phenylmethyl)benzoyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.61 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene
- 10 chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at
- 15 the boil to give 2.2 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 129-131°C. M⁺=376.

Reference Example 2092-Chloro-4-[[[2-Phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

- 20 A mixture of 2.8 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]aminobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.84 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride.
- 25 The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 2.6 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 184-187°C. M⁺H=366.

Reference Example 2103-Methoxy-4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]benzoic Acid

- 30 A mixture of 2.05 g of methyl 4-[[[2-phenylmethyl]benzoyl]amino]-3-methoxybenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 1.4 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide
- 35 is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene

chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 1.87 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 176-178°C. M⁺H=362.

5

Reference Example 211

3-Methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]aminolbenzoyl
Chloride

A mixture of 1.71 g of 3-methoxy-4-[[(2-phenylmethyl)benzoyl]amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 1.71 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-135°C. M⁺=376 as the methyl ester.

15

Reference Example 212

[4'-(Trifluoromethyl)-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl Chloride

A mixture of 5.0 g of 4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid in 5.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried to give 5.36 g of the desired product as a colorless oil. M⁺=280 as methyl ester.

25

Reference Example 213

Methyl 4-[[(4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]carbonyl)aminolbenzoate

A solution of 3.13 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.84 g of methyl 4-aminobenzoate and 1.43 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water,

35

saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 3.36 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 164-165°C. M⁺=396.

Reference Example 214

3-Methoxy-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoyl Chloride

10 A mixture of 2.0 g of 3-methoxy-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath under Argon for 1 hour and hexane added. The resulting solid is collected and dried
15 to give 1.92 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 136-138°C.

Reference Example 215

3-Methoxy-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoic Acid

20 A mixture of 3.78 g of methyl 3-methoxy-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam
25 bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 3.49 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p.
30 213-215°C.

Reference Example 216

Methyl 3-Methoxy-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoate

35 A solution of 3.56 g of 4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in

25 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.81 g of methyl 4-amino-3-methoxybenzoate and 1.62 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and hexane added at the boil to give 3.9 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 112-113°C.

Reference Example 217

2-Chloro-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoic acid

A mixture of 1.39 g of 2-chloro-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoic acid in 2.0 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is concentrated to a residue in vacuo to a residue. Cold hexane is added to the residue and the solid collected and dried to give 1.39 g of the desired product.

Reference Example 218

2-Chloro-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoic acid

A mixture of 3.83 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.20 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 3.42 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 187-189°C.

Reference Example 219Methyl 2-Chloro-4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoate

5 A solution of 3.56 g of [4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise to an ice cold solution of 1.86 g of methyl 2-chloro-4-aminobenzoate and 1.6 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in
10 50 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 18 hours and washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and the organic layer dried (Na₂SO₄). The organic layer is passed through a
15 pad of hydrous magnesium silicate (3X) and hexane added to the filtrate at the boil to give 4.0 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 130-132°C.

Reference Example 2204-([4'-(Trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoic Acid

20 A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 4-([4'-(trifluoromethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminobenzoate in 75 ml of absolute ethanol and 2.0 ml of 10 N sodium hydroxide is heated on a steam
25 bath for 3 hours. Water is added to obtain a solution which is extracted with methylene chloride. The aqueous phase is acidified with acetic acid and the resulting solid collected and dried in vacuo at 80°C to give 2.93 g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p.
30 243-245°C. M⁺=385.

Reference Example 221Methyl 6-([3-(2-Methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

5 To a stirred solution of 3 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 4 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 100 ml of methylene chloride is added dropwise a solution of 6.4 g of 2-methylpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 25 ml of methylene chloride. The
10 reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched with water. The organic layer is washed with water, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is stirred with ether and the resulting solid collected and air dried to give 6.8
15 g of the desired product. M⁺=390.

Reference Example 2226-([3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

20 To a solution of 6.5 g of methyl 6-([3-(2-methylpyridinyl)carbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methyl alcohol is added 20 ml of 5N NaOH. The reaction mixture is stirred overnight and evaporated in vacuo to a residue. The
25 residue is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid. The separated solid is filtered and air-dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product. M⁺=257.

Reference Example 223Methyl 6-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

30 To a solution of 1.5 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate in 100 ml of methylene chloride is added 3 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine at room temperature. To the stirred reaction mixture is slowly added a solution of 2.5 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride. The reaction mixture is stirred at

room temperature for 4 hours and then quenched with water. The organic layer is washed well with water and dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and evaporated in vacuo to a solid residue. The residue is stirred with
5 ether, filtered and dried to give 3.0 g of the desired product: $M^+ = 332$.

Reference Example 224

6-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic Acid

10 To a stirred solution of 2.5 g of methyl 6-[[[1,1'-Biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]-pyridine-3-carboxylate in 50 ml of 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol is added 10 ml of 5N sodium hydroxide and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction
15 mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dissolved in water and neutralized with acetic acid. The separated colorless solid is filtered and air dried to give 2.0 g of the desired product: $M^+ = 318$.

Reference Example 225

20 Methyl 2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoate

A mixture of 12 g of methyl 2-(iodomethyl)benzoate, 20 g of n-butyl stannane and 2 g of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0) are refluxed in degassed toluene for 48 hours. The reaction
25 mixture is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by column chromatography on silica gel by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane to give 5.5 g of the desired product as an oil. $M^+ = 213$.

30 Reference Example 226

2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoic Acid

A mixture of 3.0 g of methyl 2-(2-pyridinyl)benzoate and 600 mg of sodium hydroxide in 50 ml of 9:1 methanol:water is refluxed for 4 hours. The
35 reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo and the residue dissolved in 50 ml of cold water. The solution

is neutralized with glacial acetic acid and the resulting product filtered, washed with water, and dried to give 2.5 g of the desired product: M+1=200.

5

Example 1

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a stirred solution of 0.39 g of 10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepine, 1.1 ml of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.17 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature for 16 hours, and diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 20 ml each of 1M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate is concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.335 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 180-186°C.

15
20Example 2

N-[5-[(9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-9-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

25

As described for Example 1, 9,10-dihydro-4-H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine in dichloromethane, in the presence of triethylamine is reacted with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a non-crystalline yellow solid.

30

Example 3

N-[5-(4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine-5-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, a mixture of 4,10-dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine and triethylamine in dichloromethane is reacted with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 4

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 5,6-dihydro-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepine is reacted in dichloromethane, in the presence of triethylamine, with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as white crystals, m.p. 187-189°C.

Example 5

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 5,6-dihydro[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepine reacted with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]dichloromethane in the presence of triethylamine to give the product as a non-crystalline solid.

Example 6

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine is reacted in dichloromethane in the presence of triethylamine, with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 7

N-[5-(4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(2H)-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 As described for Example 1, 2,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2-methylpyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted in dichloromethane, in the presence of triethylamine, with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 8

10 N-[5-(6,7-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

 As describe for Example 1, 6,7-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepine is reaction in dichloromethane in the
15 presence of triethylamine, with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 9

20 N-[5-(4,5-Dihydro-6H-thieno[3,2-d][1]benzazepin-6-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

 As described for Example 1, 4,5-dihydro-6H-thieno[3,2-d][1]benzazepine is reacted in
 dichloromethane, in the presence of triethylamine, with
25 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 10

N-[5-(5,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-c][2]benzazepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

30 As described for Example 1, 5, 10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-c][2]benzazepine in dichloromethane in the presence of triethylamine is reacted with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 11

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a solution of 0.20 mol of 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine, 0.80 mol of triethylamine is added 0.42 mol of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 15 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon for 16 hours and diluted with dichloromethane (25 ml). The mixture is washed with H₂O, 1M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue in methanol-tetrahydrofuran(1:1) stirred with 1N NaOH for 5 hours. The mixture is neutralized with acetic acid and the solvent removed. To the residue is added H₂O and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with H₂O, 1N HCl, 1M NaHCO₃ and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent removed under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

Example 12

N-[5-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.293 g of 6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine and 625 mL triethylamine in 3.5 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 0.657 g of 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride in 1.5 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 40 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 1M NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The residual solid is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-

hexane(1:1) as solvent to give the product as a glass. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.395 g of white crystals, m.p. 134-142°C.

Example 13

5 N-[5-[4,5-Dihydro-2-methylpyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(2H)-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 12, 2,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2-methylpyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is
10 reacted with 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 14

15 N-[5-[6,7-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepin-5-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 12, 6,7-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepine is reacted with 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

20 Example 15

N-[5-[4,5-Dihydro-6H-thieno[3,2-d][1]benzazepin-6-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 12, 4,5-dihydro-6H-thieno[3,2-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with 6-[[[1,1'-
25 biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 16

N-[5-[5,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-c][2]benzazepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

30 As described for Example 12, 5,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-c][2]benzazepine is reacted with 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 17

N-[5-(9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-9-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 12, 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 18

N-[5-(4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 12, 4,10-dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 19

N-[5-(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 11, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-ylcarbonyl)amino-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 20

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 0.296 g of 6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepine and 624 mL of triethylamine in 3 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 6-((2-methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino)-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride in 4 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and the solvent removed under vacuum. To the residue is added 1M NaHCO₃ and the mixture extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with H₂O, 1M NaHCO₃ brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel

with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

Example 21

5 N-[5-(5(6H)-phenanthridinyl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

As described for Example 20, 5,6-dihydro-phenanthridine is reacted with 6-[(2-methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

10

Example 22

N-[5-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

As described for Example 20, 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine is reacted with 6-[(2-methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

15

Example 23

N-[5-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

20

As described for example 12, 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine is reacted with 6-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-ylcarbonyl)amino]-3-pyridinecarbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 24

25

5-(4-(4-Butoxy)benzoyl)-6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine

To a solution of 6,11-dihydro-5H-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine (0.12 g, 0.6 mmol) in methylene chloride (2 ml) is added triethylamine (0.12 g, 1.2 mmol), followed by 4-butoxybenzoyl chloride (0.15 g, 0.72 mmol). The resulting mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, and then treated with 4 ml of 1N NaOH. The mixture is extracted with ethyl acetate (10 ml), and the extract is washed with 1N sodium hydroxide and brine (5 ml), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and filtered through hydrous magnesium

30

35

silicate. The filtrate is evaporated, and the crude material is triturated with isooctane to give 0.24 g of white solid; Mass spectrum (CI), 372 (MH⁺)

Example 25

5 10-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenzo-[b,e][1,4]diazepine

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 0.5 g of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenzo[b,e][1,4]diazepine in 50 ml of CH₂Cl₂ and 12 ml of diisopropylethylamine is added
10 dropwise a solution of 0.67 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride in 50 ml of CH₂Cl₂. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. An additional 0.3 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride in 30 ml of CH₂Cl₂ is added and the mixture stirred at room
15 temperature 16 hours. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and the residue dissolved in 150 ml of CHCl₃. The solution is washed with 50 ml of H₂O, dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:5) and ethyl
20 acetate-hexane (1:3) as solvent to give 0.86 g of solid, m.p. 152°C-154°C; Mass spectrum (CI), 377 (MH⁺).

Example 26

10-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine

25 To a cooled (0°C) solution of 1.0 g of 10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine and 7 ml of triethylamine in 30 ml of CH₂Cl₂ under argon is added dropwise 2.0 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours
30 and diluted with 50 ml of CHCl₃. The mixture is washed with 30 ml each of H₂O, 2NHCl, H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O, and dried (Na₂SO₄). Solvent is removed under vacuum to give 1.6 g of a yellow solid, m.p. 93°C-95°C; Mass spectrum (CI), 378 (MH⁺).

Example 27

9-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-9,10-dihydro-4H-
thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 9,10-dihydro-4H-
5 thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with [1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a
yellow solid; Mass spectrum (CI) 381 (MT).

Example 28

10 5-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-6,7-dihydro-5H-
dibenz[b,d]azepine

As described for Example 26, 6,7-dihydro-5H-
dibenz[b,d]azepine is reacted with [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 29

15 6-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-5,11-dihydro-6H-
pyrido[2,3-e][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 5,11-dihydro-6H-
pyrido[2,3-e][1]benzazepine is reacted with [1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a
20 solid.

Example 30

5-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-
b][1,4]benzothiazepine

As described for Example 26, 5,6-
25 dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzothiazepine is reacted with
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product
as a solid.

Example 31

30 10-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-10,11-
dihydro[b,f][1,4]thiazepine

As described for Example 26, 10,11-
dihydro[b,f][1,4]thiazepine is reacted with [1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a
solid.

Example 3210-(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)-10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine

As described for Example 26, 10,11-

- 5 dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as an off-white, m.p. 103° - 106°C; Mass spectrum (CI), 406 (MH⁺).

Example 335-(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)-5,6,11,12-tetrahydrodibenz[b,f]azocine

10

As described for Example 26, 5,6,11,12-

tetrahydrodibenz[b,f]azocine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid, m.p. 89°-92°C, Mass spectrum (CI), 418 (MH⁺)

15

Example 3410-(4-(Benzoylbenzoyl))-10,11-dihydro[b,f][1,4]thiazepine

As described for Example 26, 10,11-

dihydro[b,f][1,4]thiazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

20

Example 355-(4-(Benzoylbenzoyl))-5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzothiazepine

As described for Example 26, 5,6-

- 25 dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzothiazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 366-(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)-5,11-dihydro-6H-pyrido[2,3-e][1]benzazepine

30

As described for Example 26, 5,11-dihydro-6H-pyrido[2,3-e][1]benzazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 375-[(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)]3-6,7-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepine

As described for Example 26, 6,7-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,d]azepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 389-[(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)]1-9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 39

15 5-[(4-Benzoylbenzoyl)]1-4,10-dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 4,10dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with 4-(benzoyl)benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 405-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-4,10-dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 4,10-dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepine is reacted with [1,1'biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 41

30 6-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine

As described for Example 26, 2 mmol of 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with 5 mmol of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride. The product is stirred in methanol with 2N NaOH for 16 hours and the mixture concentrated and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed

with 1 M citric acid, NaHCO₃, H₂O, dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed to give the product of the example as a solid.

Example 42

5 N-[4-(5,6-Dihydropyrazolo-[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 11, 6-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 43

15 N-[4-(5,6-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

As described for Example 11, 6-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo[4,3-d]benzazepine is reacted with 2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product of the example as a solid.

Example 44

25 N-[4-(5,6-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

As described for Example 11, 6-(4-aminobenzoyl)-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrazolo-[4,3-d]benzazepine is reacted with 2-(dimethylaminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 45

30 N-[5-(5,6,11,12-tetrahydrodibenz[b,f]azocin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a cooled (0°C) and stirred solution of 0.246 g of 5,6,11,12-tetrahydrodibenz[b,f]azocine 695 mL of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.586 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred 16 hours

under argon, diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water, and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of NaHCO₃, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The residue (450 mg) is chromatographed on silica gel preparative plates to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.20 g of white crystals, m.p. 198° - 200°C.

10

Example 46

N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a mixture of 0.197 g of 10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine and 0.402 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl chloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane (cooled in ice bath) is added dropwise 0.154 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 2 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 2 hours. The mixture is poured into water and the organic layer separated. The organic extract is washed with 2N Na₂CO₃, water, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filter cake washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give 0.65 g of solid. The solid is purified by thick layer chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate (2:1) as solvent to give 0.110 g of a glass, m.p. 107°C-122°C. Anal. Found: C, 80.8; H, 4.9; N, 6.0.

30

Example 47

N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.263 g of 10,11-dihydro-10(4-amino-2-chlorobenzoyl)dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine, 0.195 g of [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride and 0.116 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 7 ml of dichloromethane is

35

stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N Na_2CO_3 , water, brine and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solution is filtered through a thin
5 pad of hydrous magnesium silicate (pad washed with dichloromethane). The filtrate is concentrated to dryness to give a yellow solid. The solid is purified by chromatography on thick layer silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:1) as solvent to give 0.12 g of

a yellow glass, m.p. 145°C-188°C: Anal. found: C, 73.6; H, 4.6; N, 5.0; Cl, 6.4.

Example 48

5 N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 46, 10,11-dihydrodibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepine is reacted in dichloromethane with 2-[(2-methyl-5-fluorobenzoyl)amino]-5-pyridinylcarbonyl chloride in the
10 presence of N,N-diisopropylethylamine to give the product as crystals. m.p. 180°C-186°C.

As described for Example 46 the following compounds can be prepared.

15

Example 49

N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 50

20 N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 51

N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

25

Example 52

N-[4-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 53

30 N-[4-Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

As described for Example 48 the following compounds can be prepared.

Example 54

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 55

5 N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

Example 56

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzamide

10

Example 57

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-3-pyridinylcarboxamide

Example 58

15 N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-hydroxybenzamide

Example 59

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)benzamide

Example 60

20 N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)-3-pyridinylcarboxamide

Example 61

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzamide

25

Example 62

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-1,1-biphenyl-2-carboxamide

Example 63

30 N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]-oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 64

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 65

N-[5-(Dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl2-pyridinyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 66

5 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.198 g of 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepine, 0.155 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine and 0.404 g of 6-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 12 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 3.5 hours. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N Na₂CO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The solid is dissolved hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) and the solution filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The pad is washed with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give a glass, m.p. 107°C-114°C Anal. Found: C, 74.4; H, 5.7; N, 8.8

Example 67

25 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.198 g of 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepine, 0.155 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine and 0.444 g of 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride in 12 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N Na₂CO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filter pad is washed with 50 ml of hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) and the filtrate concentrated to dryness.

The residue is triturated with ether to give a solid, m.p. 205-217°C. Anal. Found: C, 72.3; H, 4.2; N, 7.9; Cl, 6.7.

- 5 As described for Example 66, the following compounds can be prepared.

Example 68

10 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 69

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

Example 70

15 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 71

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-hydroxybenzamide

20 Example 72

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2,5-difluorobenzamide

Example 73

25 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzamide

Example 74

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)benzamide

Example 75

30 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide

Example 76

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(aminomethyl)benzamide

Example 77

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-methoxybenzamide

Example 78

5 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 79

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

10

Example 80

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-fluoro-6-chlorobenzamide

Example 81

15

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide

Example 82

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

Example 83

20

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-3-pyridinylcarboxamide

Example 84

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino)-3-pyridinylcarboxamide

25

Example 85

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2(dimethylamino)-3-pyridinylcarboxamide

Example 86

30

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-(aminomethyl)-4-pyridinylcarboxamide

Example 87

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)-4-pyridinylcarboxamide

35 As described for Example 67, the following compounds can
be prepared.

Example 88

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chloro-6-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 89

5 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3,6-dimethylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 90

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

10 Example 91

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 92

15 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chloro-6-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 93

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 94

20 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 95

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

25 Example 96

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 97

30 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 98

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-
chlorophenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 99

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 100

5 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 101

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

10

Example 102

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxamide

Example 103

15 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 104

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 105

20 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 106

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

25

Example 107

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 108

30 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

As described for Example 67, the following compounds can be prepared.

Example 109

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-fluoro-6-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 110

5 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepine-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3,6-dichlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 111

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-fluorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

10

Example 112

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 113

15

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 114

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 115

20

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 116

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-fluorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

25

Example 117

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 118

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

30

Example 119

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 120

35

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 121

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 122

5 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-fluorophenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 123

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl-3-methyl-5-fluorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

10

Example 124

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-methylphenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 125

15 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 126

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 127

20 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dichlorophenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 128

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

25

Example 129

N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-fluorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 130

30 N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 46, the reaction of 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepine (1 mmol) with 2-[(2-methyl-5-fluorobenzoyl)amino]-5-pyridinylcarbonyl chloride (1.0 mmol) in dichloromethane in the presence of N,N-diisopropylethylamine (3 mmol) gives the product as a glass.

35

Example 131

N-[5-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-
2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 66, the reaction of
5 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepine (0.198 g)
with 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-
carbonyl chloride (0.404 g) in dichloromethane in the
presence of N,N-diisopropylethylamine (0.155 g) gives
the product as a solid.

Example 132

10 N-[4-(Pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-
3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 66, reaction of 0.198
g of 5,6-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepine with
15 0.444 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-
chlorobenzoyl chloride in dichloromethane in the
presence of N,N-diisopropylethylamine gives the product
as a solid.

Example 133

20 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a mixture of 10.55 g of 6,11-
dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-5(6H)-one in 40
ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 15 ml of 10 molar borane-
25 dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The mixture is
stirred at room temperature 2 hours and then refluxed
(under argon) for 4 hours. An additional 40 ml of
tetrahydrofuran is added and the mixture refluxed
overnight. To the cooled mixture is added 12 ml of
30 methanol and the solvent removed. To the residue is
added 30 ml of 2N NaOH and the solution refluxed 2 hours
under argon. The mixture is extracted with ethyl
acetate and the extract washed with 2N citric acid. The
aqueous layer is made basic with 2N NaOH and extracted
35 with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with H₂O,
brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered

through a thin layer of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give 4.65 g of brown solid. The solid is purified by chromatography on silica gel to give the product as a solid. A 4.85 g sample of crude product is triturated with ether to give 2.68 g of 6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepine as a solid.

A mixture of 0.296 g of 6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepine, 0.604 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride and 0.232 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 6 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue is purified on thick layer silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) as solvent to give the product as a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give off-white crystals, m.p. 220°C-221°C.

Example 134

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.197 g of 6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepine, 0.444 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride and 0.155 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 8 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue is chromatographed on thick layer

silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) to give 0.160 g of solid, m.p. 147°C-165°C.

Anal Found: C, 72.1; H, 5.1; N, 9.1; Cl, 6.3.

Example 135

- 5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, hydrochloride

Hydrogen chloride (gas) is bubbled into 50 ml of anhydrous chilled methanol for 15 minutes. A 25 ml
10 sample of the methanolic hydrogen chloride is added to 0.30 g of N-[4-(6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide. The mixture is stirred at 0°C for 0.5 hours and allowed to warm to room temperature.
15 The solvent is removed and the solid dried under vacuum to give 0.31 g of solid, m.p. 195°C-210°C.

As described for Example 134, the following compounds can be prepared by reaction of 6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepine with the
20 appropriate substituted or unsubstituted [(arylcarbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride or the appropriate substituted or unsubstituted[(arylcarbonyl)-amino]pyridinylcarbonyl chloride.

Example 136

- 25 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 137

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

- 30 Example 138

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chloro-6-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 139

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 140

5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 141

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

10

Example 142

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 143

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 144

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

20

Example 145

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dichlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 146

25 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methyl-6-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 147

30 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chloro-6-fluorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 148

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 149

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 150

5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 151

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

10

Example 152

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 153

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 154

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 155

20 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 156

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

25

Example 157

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 158

30 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 159

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methyl-6-fluorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 160

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 161

5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 162

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

10

Example 163

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-methoxy pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 164

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylthiopyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 165

20 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 166

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

25

Example 167

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 168

30 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 169

35 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chloro-6-methylphenyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 70

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-
carboxamide

5

Example 71

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-
carboxamide

Example 72

10 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-
carboxamide

Example 73

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-3-methylpyridine-2-carboxamide

Example 74

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methylpyridine-2-
carboxamide

20

Example 75

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-
carboxamide

Example 76

25 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carboxamide,

m.p. 278°C-281°C

Example 77

30 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 78

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 79

35 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-
ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-fluorobenzamide

Example 180

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 181

5 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 182

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

10

Example 183

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 184

15 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 185

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-3-chloropyridine-2-carboxamide

Example 186

20 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 187

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

25

Example 188

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

Example 189

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

30

Example 190

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzamide

Example 191

35 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

Example 192

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

Example 193

5 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

Example 194

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

10

Example 195

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-hydroxybenzamide

Example 196

15 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-acetyloxybenzamide

Example 197

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminobenzamide

Example 198

20 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino) benzamide

Example 199

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)benzamide

25

Example 200

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminomethylbenzamide

Example 201

30 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(diethylamino)benzamide

Example 202

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzamide

Example 203

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide

Example 204

5 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 205

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

10 Example 206

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methoxypyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 207

15 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylthiopyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 208

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminopyridine-3-carboxamide

20 Example 209

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylamino-pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 210

25 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 211

30 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]thiophene-2-carboxamide

Example 212

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]thiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 213

35 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]furane-2-carboxamide

Example 214

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylthiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 215

5 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-3-methylthiophene-2-carboxamide

Example 216

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorothiophene-3-carboxamide

10

Example 217

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylthiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 218

15 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenzo[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.196 g of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenzo[b,e][1,4]diazepine, 0.155 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine and 0.444 g of 4-([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino)-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride in 12 ml of dichloromethane is stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N K₂CO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue triturated with ether and the solvent removed. The residue is triturated with dichloromethane to give 0.31 g of solid, m.p. 158°C-184°C. Anal. Found for C₃₃H₂₄ClN₃O₂ 1/2 H₂O; C, 73.7; H, 4.6; N, 7.5; Cl, 6.9.

As described for Example 218, the following compounds can be prepared by the reaction of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenzo[b,e][1,4]diazepine with the appropriate substituted or unsubstituted (aryl-

35

carbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride or the appropriate substituted or unsubstituted [(aryl-carbonyl)amino]pyridinylcarbonyl chloride.

Example 219

5 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 220

10 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 221

15 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 222

20 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 223

25 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 224

N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 225

30 N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 226

N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

35 Example 227

N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 228

N-[4-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 229

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

5

Example 230

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-3-methyl-6-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 231

10 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-6-fluorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 232

15 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 233

20 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-6-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 234

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

25

Example 235

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 236

30 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 237

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 238

35 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-
yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 239

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 240

5 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 241

10 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 242

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 243

15 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 244

20 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 245

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 246

25 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 247

30 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-phenylmethyl)benzamide

Example 248

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(3-chlorophenylmethyl)benzamide

Example 249

35 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(phenylmethyl)benzamide

Example 250

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methoxypyridine-3-carboxamide

5

Example 251

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 252

10 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-methylphenyl]-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 253

15 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-methylphenyl]-3-methylpyridine-2-carboxamide

Example 254

20 N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 255

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

25

Example 256

N-[4-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-3-methyl-6-chlorophenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 257

30 N-[5-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide,

m.p. 280°C-285°C

Example 258

35 N-[5-(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 259

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 260

5 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 261

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

10

Example 262

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 263

15 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 264

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 265

20 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 266

25 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methoxypyridine-6-carboxamide

Example 267

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 268

30 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-pyridinecarboxamide

Example 269

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methyl-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 270

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

Example 271

5 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 272

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzamide

10 Example 273

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

Example 274

15 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

Example 275

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

Example 276

20 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

Example 277

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-hydroxybenzamide

25 Example 278

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-acetyloxybenzamide

Example 279

30 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminobenzamide

Example 280

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide

Example 281

35 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(aminomethyl)benzamide

Example 282

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)benzamide

Example 283

5 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 284

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

10

Example 285

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methoxypyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 286

15 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylthio)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 287

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-aminopyridine-3-carboxamide

20

Example 288

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(methylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 289

25 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 290

30 N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylthiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 300

N-[5-[(5,11-Dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-3-methylthiophene-2-carboxamide

Example 301

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)-
carbonyl]-phenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]
5 azepine (0.195g), 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]
benzoyl chloride (0.41g) and 0.155 g of N,N-
diisopropylethylamine in 12 ml of dichloromethane is
stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The mixture is
poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane.
10 The extract is washed with H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O,
brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered
through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the
filter pad washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate is
concentrated to dryness to give 0.66 g of a yellow
15 solid. Chromatography on thick layer silica gel plates
with hexane-ethyl acetate (1.5:1) gives crystals
(0.165g) (from dichloromethane-ethyl acetate), m.p.
224°C-225°C

Example 302

20 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)-
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.195 g of 6,11-dihydro-5H-
dibenz[b,e]azepine, 0.444 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carbonyl]amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride and 0.155 g of
25 N,N-diisopropylethylamine is stirred at room temperature
for 3 hours. The mixture is poured into water and
extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed
with H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O, brine and dried
(Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue
30 chromatographed on thick layer silica gel plates with
solvent hexane-ethyl acetate (1.5:1) to give 0.32 g of
crystals, m.p. 120°C-125°C.

As described for Example 302, the following
compounds can be prepared by reaction of 6,11-dihydro-
35 5H-dibenz[b,e]azepine with the appropriate substituted
or unsubstituted 4-[(arycarbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride

or the appropriate substituted or unsubstituted 6-
[(arycarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Example 303

5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 304

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 305

10 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-3,6-dichlorophenyl]-2-(2-
thienyl)benzamide

Example 306

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 307

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 308

20 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chloro-6-methylphenyl]-2-(2-
thienyl)benzamide

Example 309

25 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 310

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-2,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 311

30 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 312

35 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 313

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methyl-6-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

5

Example 314

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chloro-6-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 315

10

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 316

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

15

Example 317

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 318

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

20

Example 319

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 320

25

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 321

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

30

Example 322

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 323

35

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 324

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 325

5 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 326

10 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 327

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[3'-methylthio-1,1'-biphenyl]-
2-carboxamide

Example 328

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[3'-methoxy-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 329

20 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-[4'-dimethylamino-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 330

25 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-[3'-chloro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 331

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 332

30 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 333

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl]phenyl]-[3'-chloro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 334

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-3-chlorophenyl][3'-chloro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

5

Example 335

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-3-methylphenyl][3'-chloro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 336

10

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl][3'-chloro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 337

15

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-3-chlorophenyl][4'-fluoro-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

Example 338

20

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 339

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 340

25

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-aminopyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 341

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-(methylamino)pyridine-3-
carboxamide

30

Example 342

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-
carboxamide

Example 343

35

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,elazepin-5-yl)
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-3-methylthiophene-2-carboxamide

Example 344

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-methylthiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 345

5 N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-chlorobenzamide

Example 346

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

10 Example 347

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

Example 348

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
 15 carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

Example 349

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-(methylamino)benzamide

Example 350

20 N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-hydroxybenzamide

Example 351

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)]
carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-(aminomethyl)benzamide

25 Example 352

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-
5-yl)]carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepine (2 mmol) is reacted
 30 with 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride (2.1 mmol) in the presence of triethylamine (4 mmol) in dichloromethane to give the product as a solid, m.p. 102°C-104°C.

Example 353

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

- 5 As described for Example 134, 6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepine (0.197 g) is reacted with 4-[(1,1'-biphenyl)-2-carbonyl]amino)-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride (0.444 g) in the presence of N,N-diisopropylethylamine (0.155 g) in 12 ml of
10 dichloromethane to give the product as a solid.

- As described for Example 352, the following compounds can be prepared by reaction of 6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepine with the appropriate
15 substituted or unsubstituted 4-[(arylcarbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride or the appropriate substituted or unsubstituted 6-[(arylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Example 354

- 20 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 355

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

- 25 Example 356

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 357

- 30 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methyl-6-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 358

- 35 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 359

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 360

5 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

Example 361

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

10

Example 362

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 363

15 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 364

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 365

20 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 366

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3,6-dimethylphenyl]-2-(3-

25

pyridinyl)benzamideExample 367

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 368

30 N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 369

N-[4-[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 370

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

5

Example 371

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxypyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 372

10 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(methylthio)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 373

15 N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 374

N-[4-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-aminopyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 375

20 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Example 376

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-thienyl)benzamide

25

Example 377

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-thienyl)benzamide

Example 378

30 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(2-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 379

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 380

35 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide

Example 381

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-(2-furanyl)benzamide

Example 382

5 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-(3-furanyl)benzamide

Example 383

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-chlorobenzamide

10

Example 384

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

Example 385

15 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

Example 386

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

Example 387

20 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

Example 388

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-hydroxybenzamide

25

Example 389

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-aminobenzamide

Example 390

30 N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-(methylamino)benzamide

Example 391

N-[5-(6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl-2-(dimethylamino)benzamide

Example 392

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide

5

Example 393

N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-(dimethylamino)pyridine-3-carboxamide

Example 394

10 N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylthiophene-3-carboxamide

Example 395

15 N-[5-[6,11-Dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl]carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-3-methylthiophene-2-carboxamide

Example 396

N-[4-[4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

20

A mixture of 0.278 g of 4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine, 1.11 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl chloride and 0.426 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 12 ml of dichloromethane-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) is stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N Na₂CO₃, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed under vacuum to give 1.45 g of solid. To the preceding solid in 25 ml methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) is added 2.78 ml of 2N NaOH and the solution stirred at room temperature for 3.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum, water added to the residue and the mixture extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with H₂O, 0.5 N citric acid; H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesiim silicate and the

35

filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (0.95 g) is triturated with ether-dichloromethane to give 0.17 g of crystals, m.p. 255°C-260°C; Anal. found for $C_{31}H_{24}N_4O_2 \cdot 1/2H_2O$: C, 75.9; H, 5.1; N, 10.8.

5

Example 397

N-[4-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

A mixture of 0.185 g of 4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine, 0.814 g of 4-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride and 0.284 g of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 9 ml of dichloromethane-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) is stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 2N NaOH, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed under vacuum to give 0.99 g of a solid. To the preceding solid in 15 ml of methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) is added 1.75 ml of 2N NaOH and the solution stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and the mixture extracted with chloroform. The extract is washed with 1N citric acid, H₂O, brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue (0.76 g) is chromatographed on thick layer silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (1:2) as solvent to give 0.37 g of white solid, m.p. 172-202°C, Anal. found for 1/2 hydrate: C, 70.1; H, 5.0; N, 9.8; Cl, 6.4.

30

Example 398

N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 396, (0.1 mmol) of 4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with (0.21 mmol) of 6-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]

35

pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a light tan solid. Recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane, m.p. 228°C-234°C as white crystals.

Example 399

5 N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 396, 0.10 mmol of 4,5-dehydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepine is reacted with 0.21 mmol of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-2-pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride to give the product as a tan solid, (0.15 g) m.p. 126°C-176°C: Mass Spec (FAB)-found 442 (M⁺+H).

Example 400

15 N-[5-(4H-Thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

As described by J.B. Press et al in J. Med. Chem., 22, 725 (1979), 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-10(9H)-one is prepared. This intermediate (4.8 g) is dissolved in tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen and 4.2 g of lithium aluminum hydride (LAH) is added portionwise with stirring. The mixture is refluxed for 18 hours and quenched by the dropwise addition of water. The mixture is extracted with chloroform and the extract is filtered through diatomaceous earth. The organic layer is washed with water (200 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed. The residual oil is chromatographed on thick layer silica gel plates with chloroform as eluent to give 1.2 g of 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepine as a solid. The proceeding compound (0.5 g) is reacted with 1.06 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride, hydrochloride in dichloromethane which contains 7 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and then is washed with water, 1N HCl, saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and

dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed and the residue purified by chromatography on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:3) to give 1.1 g of a solid, m.p. 89°C-92°C.

5

Example 401

N-[4-(4H-Thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 400, 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepine is reacted with 4-
10 [([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]benzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 402

N-[4-(4H-Thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

15

As described for Example 400, 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepine is reacted with 4-
[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-2-chlorobenzoyl chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 403

20 N-[5-(4H-Thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 400, 9,10-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepine is reacted with 6-
[([1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl)amino]-pyridine-3-carbonyl
25 chloride to give the product as a solid.

Example 404

5,11-Dihydro-10-[4-(2-thienyl)benzoyl]-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine

A mixture of 3 g of 4-(2-thienyl)benzoic acid
30 and 30 ml of sulfonyl chloride is refluxed for 45 minutes and the solvent removed. The residue is dissolved in carbon tetrachloride and the solvent removed under vacuum (2-times) to give 4-(2-thienyl)benzoyl chloride. To a cooled (0°C) solution of 2.0 g
35 of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine and 7 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 30 ml of dichloromethane

is added dropwise a solution of 3.15 g of 4-(2-thienyl)benzoyl chloride in 30 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 50 ml of chloroform. The solution is washed with 30 ml each of water, 2N HCl, saturated NaHCO₃, water and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue (3.1 g) chromatographed on silica gel (column) with hexane-ethyl acetate (2:1) as eluent to give 1.8 g of solid, m.p. 114°C-116°C.

Example 405

5,11-Dihydro-10-[4-(3-thienyl)benzoyl]-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine

To a mixture of 2.0 g of 5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepine and 7 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 30 ml of dichloromethane is added dropwise a solution of 3.15 g of 4-(3-thienyl)benzoyl chloride in 30 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred 16 hours at room temperature and diluted with dichloromethane (50 ml). The solution is washed with 30 ml each of H₂O, 2N HCl, saturated NaHCO₃, water and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue purified by chromatography on silica gel with hexane-ethyl acetate as eluent to give a solid.

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V₁ Receptors

Rat liver plasma membranes expressing the vasopressin V₁ receptor subtypes are isolated by sucrose density gradient according to the method described by Lesko et al., (1973). These membranes are quickly suspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4, containing 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and kept frozen at -70°C until used in subsequent binding experiments. For binding experiments, the following is added to the wells of a ninety-six well format microtiter plate: 100 ml of

100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 10.0 mM MgCl₂, 0.2% heat inactivated BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg%; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 ml of [phenylalanyl-3,4,5,-³H] vasopressin (S.A. 45.1 Ci/mmole) 0.8 mM, and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80 ml of tissue membranes containing 20 mg of tissue protein. The plates are kept undisturbed on the bench top at room temperature for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific samples are assayed in the presence of 0.1 mM of the unlabeled antagonist phenylalanylvasopressin, added in 20.0 ml volume.

For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 ml volume to a final incubation volume of 200 ml. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH) and displayed in Table I.

Binding Assay to Rat Kidney Medullary V₂ Receptors

Medullary tissues from rat kidneys are dissected out, cut into small pieces and soaked in a 0.154 mM sodium chloride solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized in a 0.25 M sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized in a 0.25 M sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA and 0.1 mM PMSF using a Potter-Elvehjem homogenizer with a teflon pestle. The homogenate is filtered through several

layers (4 layers) of cheese cloth. The filtrate is rehomogenized using a dounce homogenizer, with a tight fitting pestle. The final homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 X g for 15 min. The nuclear pellet is discarded
5 and the supernatant fluid recentrifuged at 40,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet formed contains a dark inner part with the exterior, slightly pink. The pink outer part is suspended in a small amount of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is
10 determined by the Lowry's method (Lowry et al., J. Biol. Chem., 1953). The membrane suspension is stored at -70°C, in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.2% inactivated BSA and 0.1 mM PMSF in aliquots of 1.0 ml containing 10.0 mg protein per ml of suspension until sue in
15 subsequent binding experiments.

For binding experiments, the following is added in ml volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0 ml of 100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.2 % heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCL₂ and
20 a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg % 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0 ml of [³H] Arginine⁸, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmol) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 ml of
25 tissue membranes (200.0 mg tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 minutes to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0 mM of unlabeled ligand, added in 20 ml volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in
30 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 ml volume to a final incubation volume of 200 ml. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The
radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-
35 receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of

65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH) and displayed in Table I.

5 Radioligand Binding Experiments with Human Platelet Membranes

(a) Platelet Membrane Preparation:

Frozen platelet rich plasma (PRP), received from the Hudson Valley Blood Services, are thawed to
10 room temperature. (Platelet Source: Hudson Valley Blood Services, Westchester Medical Center, Valhalla, NY). The tubes containing the PRP are centrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 minutes at 4°C and the supernatant fluid discarded. The platelets resuspended in an equal
15 volume of 50.0 mM Tris. HCL, pH 7.5 containing 120 mM NaCl and 20.0 mM EDTA. The suspension is recentrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 minutes. This washing step is repeated one more time. The wash discarded and the lysed pellets homogenized in low ionic strength buffer
20 of Tris. HCL, 5.0 mM, pH 7.5 containing 5.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 minutes. The resulting pellet is resuspended in Tris.HCL buffer, 70.0 mM, pH 7.5 and recentrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 minutes. The final pellet is resuspended in 50.0 mM
25 Tris.HCL buffer pH 7.4 containing 120 mM NaCl and 5.0 mM KCl to give 1.0-2.0 mg protein per ml of suspension.

(b) Binding to Vasopressin V₁ receptor subtype in Human Platelet Membranes:

In wells of a 96 well format microtiter plate,
30 add 100 µl of 50.0 mM Tris. HCL buffer containing 0.2% BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors (aprotinin, leupeptin etc.) Then add 20 µl of [³H]Ligand (Manning or Arg⁸Vasopressin), to give final concentrations ranging from 0.01 to 10.0 nM. Initiate the binding by
35 adding 80.0 µl of platelet suspension (approx. 100 mg protein). Mix all reagents by pipetting the mixture up

and down a few times. Non specific binding is measured in the presence of 1.0 mM of unlabeled ligand (Manning or Arg⁸Vasopressin). Let the mixture stand undisturbed at room temperature for ninety (90) minutes. Upon this
5 time, rapidly filter off the incubate under vacuum suction over GF/B filters, using a Brandel Harvester. The radioactivity caught on the filter disks is determined by the addition of liquid scintillant and counting in a liquid scintillator.

Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2)
Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V2
Vasopressin Receptor

(a) Membrane Preparation

- 5 Flasks of 175 ml capacity, continuing attached cells grown to confluence, are cleared of culture medium by aspiration. The flasks containing the attached cells are rinsed with 2 x 5 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and the liquid aspirated off each time. Finally,
- 10 5 ml of an enzyme free dissociation Hank's based solution (Specialty Media, Inc., Lafayette, NJ) is added and the flasks are left undisturbed for 2 minutes. The content of all flasks is poured into a centrifuge tube and the cells pelleted at 300 x g for 15 minutes. The
- 15 Hank's based solution is aspirated off and the cells homogenized with a polytron at setting #6 for 10 sec in 10.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4 containing 0.25 M sucrose and 1.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 x g for 10 minutes to remove ghost membranes.
- 20 The supernatant fluid is centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 60 minutes to pellet the receptor protein. Upon completion, the pellet is resuspended in a small volume of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry method and the receptor
- 25 membranes are suspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to give 2.5 mg receptor protein per ml of suspension.

(b) Receptor Binding

- 30 For binding experiments, the following is added in ml volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0 ml of 100.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl₂ and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg%;
- 35 aprotinin, 1.0 mg%; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF., 20.0 ml

of [³H] Arginine⁸, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmol) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0 ml of tissue membranes (200.0 mg tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 minutes to reach equilibrium. Non specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0 mM of unlabeled ligand, added in 20 ml volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0 ml volume to a final incubation volume of 200 ml. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC₅₀ values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH) and the data is displayed in Table I.

Vasopressin V₂ Antagonist Activity in Conscious Hydrated

Rats:

Conscious hydrated rats are treated with compounds under study from 0.1 to 100 mg/kg orally or vehicle. Two to four rats are used for each compound. One hour later, arginine vasopressin (AVP, antidiuretic hormone, ADH) dissolved in peanut oil is administered at 0.4 mg/kg intraperitoneally. Two rats in each test would not receive arginine vasopressin but only the vehicle (peanut oil) to serve as water-loading control. Twenty minutes later each rat is given 30 mL/kg of deionized water orally by gavage and is placed individually in a metabolic cage equipped with a funnel and a graduated glass cylinder to collect urine for four hours. Urine volume is measure and osmolality analyzed by use of a Fiske One-Ten osmometer (Fiske Assoc., Norwood, MA, USA). Urinary sodium, potassium, and chloride are analyzed by use of ion-specific electrodes

in a Beckman E3 (Electrolyte 3) Analyzer. In the following results, decreased urine volume and decreased osmolality relative to AVP-control indicates activity.

Vasopressin V₁ Antagonist Activity in Conscious Rats:

5 Conscious rats are restrained in a supine position with elastic tape. The area at the base of the tail is locally anesthetized by subcutaneous infiltration with 2% procaine (0.2 ml). Using aseptic technique to the ventral caudal tail artery is isolated
10 and a cannula made of PE 10 and 20 (heat-fused) tubing is passed into the lower abdominal aorta. The cannula is secured, heparinized (1000 iu/cc), sealed and the wound closed with one or two stitches of Dexon 4-0. The caudal vein is also cannulated in the same manner for
15 intravenous drug administration. The duration of the surgery is approximately 5 minutes. Additional local anesthesia (2% procaine or lidocaine) is provided as needed.

The animals are placed in plastic restraining
20 cages in an upright position. The cannula is attached to a Statham P23Db pressure transducer and pulsatile blood pressure is recorded. Increase of systolic blood pressure responses to arginine vasopressin 0.01 and 0.2 international unit (I.U.) (350 I.U. = 1 mg) injections
25 are recorded prior to any drug (compound) administration, after which each rat is dosed orally with compounds under study 0.1-100 mg/kg (10 cc/kg) or intravenously 0.1-30 mg/kg (1 cc/kg). The vasopressin injections are repeated 30, 60, 90, 120, 180, 240 and 300
30 minutes later. Percentage of antagonism by the compound is calculated using the pre-drug vasopressin vasopressor response as 100%.

Oxytocin Receptor Binding

(a) Membrane Preparation

35 Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing approximately 200-250 g are injected intramuscularly

(i.m.) with 0.3 mg/kg of body weight of diethylstilbestrol (DES). The rats are sacrificed 18 hours later under pentobarbital anesthesia. The uteri are dissected out, cleaned of fat and connective tissues and rinsed in 50 ml of normal saline. The tissue pooled from six rats is homogenized in 50 ml of 0.01 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.5 mM dithiothreitol and 1.0 mM EDTA, adjusted to pH 7.4, using a polytron at setting 6 with three passes of 10 sec each. The homogenate is passed through two (2) layers of cheesecloth and the filtrate centrifuged at 1000 x g for 10 minutes. The clear supernatant is removed and recentrifuged at 165,000 x g for 30 minutes. The resulting pellet containing the oxytocin receptors is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl containing 5.0 mM MgCl₂ at pH 7.4, to give a protein concentration of 2.5 mg/ml of tissue suspension. This preparation is used in subsequent binding assays with [³H]oxytocin.

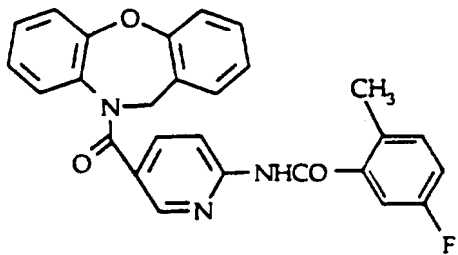
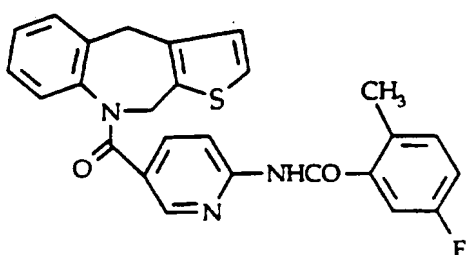
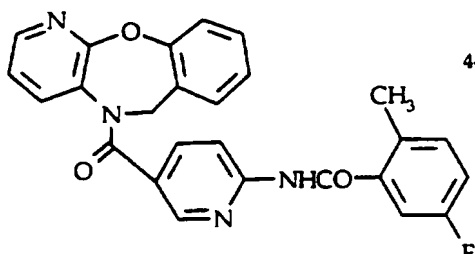
(b) Radioligand Binding

Binding of 3,5-[³H]Oxytocin ([³H]OT) to its receptors is done in microtiter plates using [³H]OT, at various concentrations, in an assay buffer of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.4 and containing 5.0 mM MgCl₂, and a mixture of protease inhibitors: BSA, 0.1 mg; aprotinin, 1.0 mg; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg; trypsin, 10.0 mg; and PMSF, 0.3 mg per 100 ml of buffer solution. Non-specific binding is determined in the presence of 1.0 uM unlabeled OT. The binding reaction is terminated after 60 minutes, at 22°C, by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters using a Brandel® cell harvester (Biomedical Research and Development Laboratories, Inc., Gaithersburg, MD). Competition experiments are conducted at equilibrium using 1.0 nM [³H]OT and varying the concentration of the displacing agents. The concentrations of agent displacing 50% of [³H]OT at its

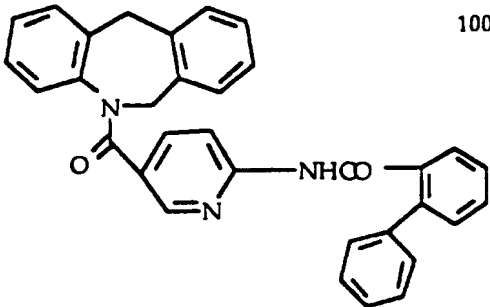
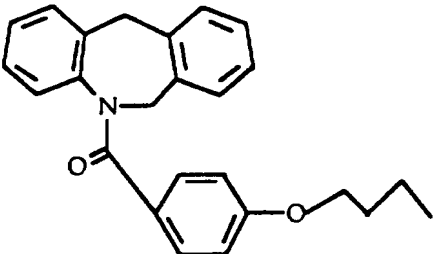
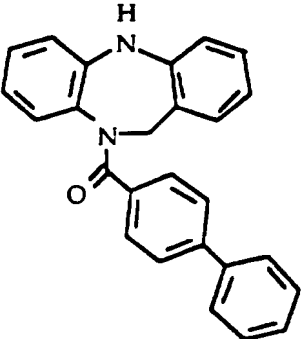
sites (IC₅₀) are calculated by a computer assisted LUNDON-2 program (LUNDON SOFTWARE INC., Ohio, USA).

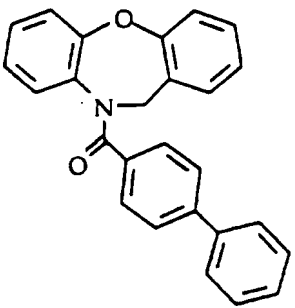
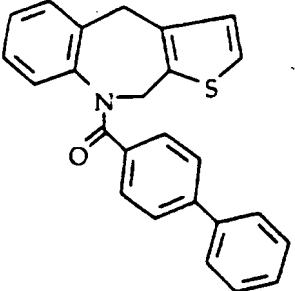
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V₁ Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V₂ Receptors or *Binding to V₁ Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and **Binding to membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V₂ Receptor

Table I

Ex. No.	Structure	V ₁ IC ₅₀ (μM)	V ₂ IC ₅₀ (μM)
1		0.24	0.054
2		0.059	0.029
4		44% at 10μM	20% at 10μM

Cont'd.

Ex. No.	Structure	V ₁	V ₂
		IC ₅₀ (μM)	IC ₅₀ (μM)
12		100% at 1μM	90% at μM
24		*72% (μM)	**26% (10μM)
25		100% (1μM)	39% (1μM)

Cont'd.			
Ex. No.	Structure	V ₁ IC ₅₀ (μM)	V ₂ IC ₅₀ (μM)
5 26		46% (1μM)	29% (10μM)
10 27		*0.014	**1.8
15 20			

Cont'd.

5	Ex. No.	Structure	V ₁	V ₂
			IC ₅₀ (μM)	IC ₅₀ (μM)
10	32		53% (10μM)	33%(10μM)
	33		10% (10μM)	16% (10μM)
20	45		34% (10μM)	62% (10μM)

Table II
Vasopressin V₂ Antagonist Activity
In Conscious Hydrated Rats

Ex. No.	Dose (mg/kg)	N	Urine Volume (ml/4 hrs)	Osmolality (mOsm/kg)
5	*	78	13.3 ± 0.3	229 ± 6
	**	6	12.1 ± 1	497 ± 53
		4	12.4 ± 0.8	361 ± 30
	***	76	2 ± 0.2	1226 ± 58
10	26	10	2	4.5
	45	10	2	6.6
	4	10	2	6.8
	2	10	2	16.5
15	32	10	2	9.3
	2	10	2	16.5
	24	10	2	4.3
	27	10	2	3.3

20

* Water-load control

** Water-load

Control +DMSO (10%)

(20%)

25

*** AVP-control

Vasopressin Antidiuretic (V_2) Response in Conscious Rats
with Free Access to Water Drinking Before But Not During
the Experiment:

5 Male or female normotensive Sprague-Dawley rats (Charles
River Laboratories, Inc., Kingston, NY) of 400-450 g of
body weight were supplied with Laboratory Rodent Feed
#5001 (PMI Feeds, Inc., Richmond, IN) and water ad
10 libitum. On the day of test, rats were placed
individually into metabolic cages equipped with
stainless steel screens (to separate the feces from the
urine) and funnels for collection of urine. Compounds,
vehicle, or reference agent was given at various oral
15 doses. During the test, rats were provided with no
water or food. After dosing, urine was collected in
graduated cylinders for four hours. Urine volume was
measured. Urinary osmolality was determined using a
Fiske One-Ten Osmometer (Fiske Associates, Norwood, MA
20 02062). An aliquot of each urine collection was
analyzed for Na^+ , K^+ and Cl^- using ion specific
electrodes a in Beckman E3 (Electrolyte 3) analyzer.
The vehicle used for testing compounds was 20%
dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) in 2.5% preboiled starch.
25

Table IV list results with compounds tested by this
procedure.

Table IV
Vasopressin V₂ Antagonist Activity in Conscious Rats

	Ex. No.	Dose (mg/Kg)	N	Urine Volume (ml/4 hrs)	Osmolality (MOsm/kg)
5	*		16	7-10±2	981±34
	47	10	2	22.0	394
	66	10	2	17.0	442
	67	10	2	21.5	402
	134	10	2	40.5	333
10		3	2	28	396
		1	2	18.2	596
	133	10	2	27.5	234
	135	10	2	39.5	284
		3	2	26.8	391
		1	2	19.5	526
	176	10	2	12.8	567
15	218	10	2	34	222
	257	10	2	22.5	317
	301	10	2	41.5	363
	302	10	2	40	356
	352	10	2	9.3	779
	396	10	2	21.8	238
	397	10	2	29.8	288
20	398	10	2	20.5	316
	399	10	2	17.0	404
	400	10	2	24.8	270
	404	10	2	6	909

*Control DMSO (20%)-2.5% corn starch

25 Compounds were dissolved in DMSO and then diluted in 2.5% corn starch (final concentration of DMSO was 20%). All rats were orally dosed with this mixture at 10ml/kg, by gavage.

Table III
Oxytocin Binding Assay

	Ex. No.	Dose (μ M)	% Inhibition	IC ₅₀ (μ M)
5	1	1	12	-
	2	10	86	1.1
	4	10	20	-
	12	10	76	0.61
	24	10	97	1.8
10	25	10	94	0.113
	26	10	73	2.5
	27	1	83	-
	32	10	88	1.8
15	33	1	37	-
	45	1	54	-

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following: salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases. The compounds can also be used in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form, convert to the active moiety in vivo.

When the compounds are employed for the above utilities, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible

powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in a sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfac-

tants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exists. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

The new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of this invention are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease
5 conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

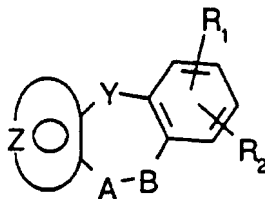
In particular, the vasopressin antagonists of this invention are therapeutically useful in the
10 treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-
15 bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

In particular, the oxytocin antagonists of this invention are useful in the prevention of preterm labor and premature birth which is a significant cause
20 of infant health problems and infant mortality.

We claim:

1. A compound selected from those of Formula

I:

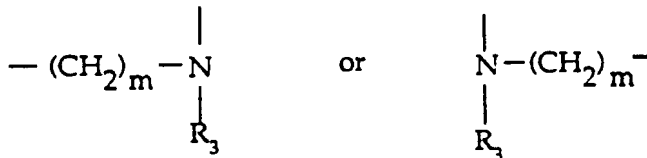


Formula I

wherein Y is selected from $(CH_2)_n$, C, S, NH, $NCOCH_3$, N-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), CH-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), CHNH-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), CHNH₂, CHN[lower alkyl (C_1-C_3)]₂, CHO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), CHS-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),

wherein n is an integer from 0-2;

A-B is



wherein m is an integer from 1-2, provided that when Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n=2, m may also be zero and when n is zero, m may also be three, provided also that when Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is 2, m may not also be two;

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, -S-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -SH, -SO lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -SO₂ lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CO-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -CF₃, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), O-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), -N-[lower alkyl (C_1-C_3)]₂, -SO₂NH₂, -SO₂NH lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl (C_1-C_3)]₂;

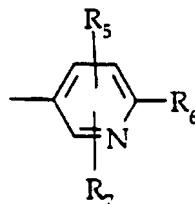
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), O-lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

R₃ is the moiety

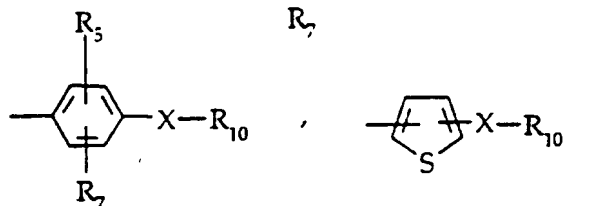


wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

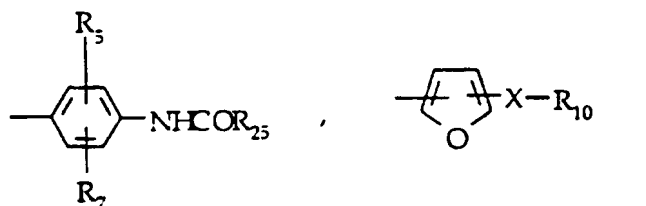
5



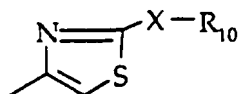
10



15



20

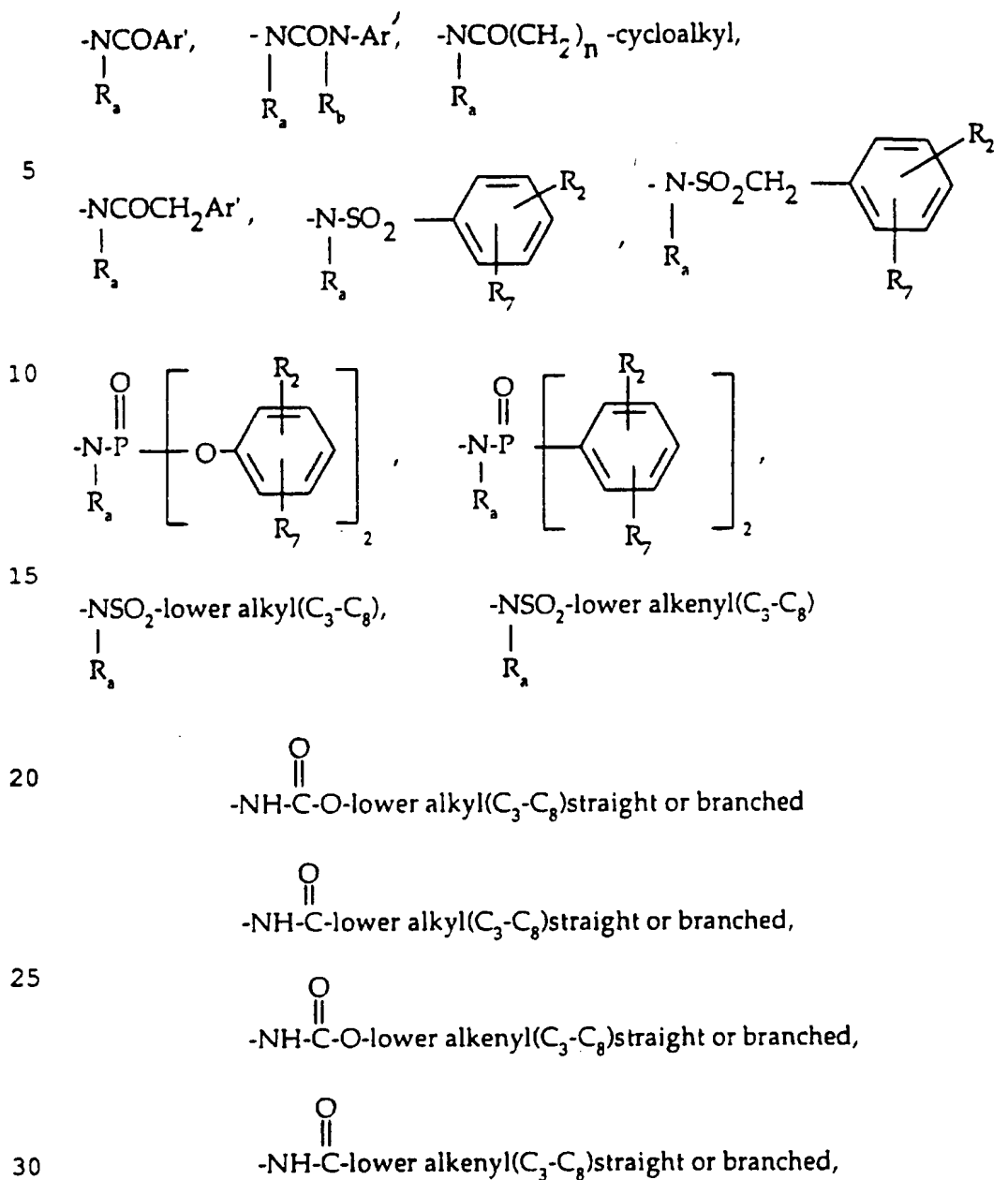


and X is O, S, -NCH₃ or -NH

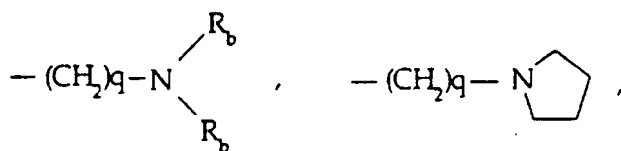
R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃);

25 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5

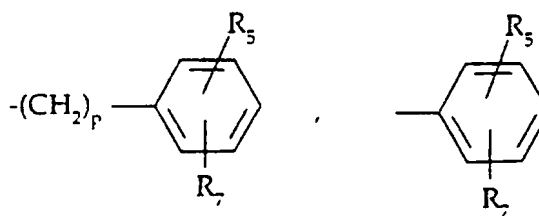


10 $-(CH_2)_2-O$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or $-CH_2CH_2OH$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; and

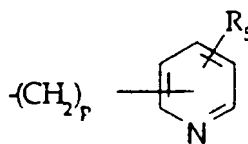
(b) a moiety of the formula:

$-X-R_{10}$, wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),

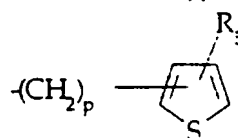
15



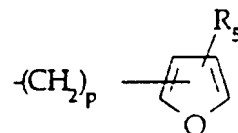
20



25

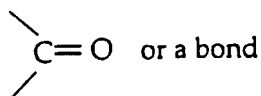


30



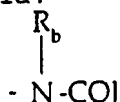
and p is zero to three;

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



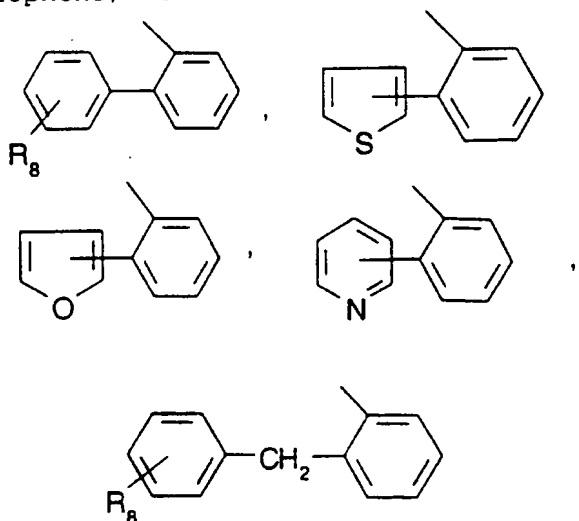
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

(c) a moiety of the formula:



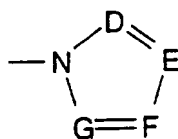
5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

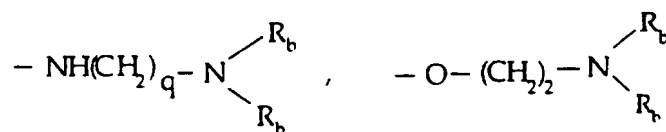
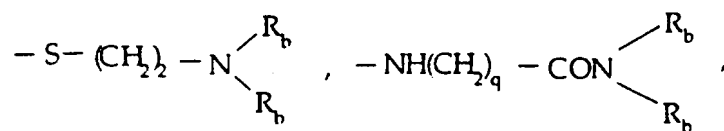
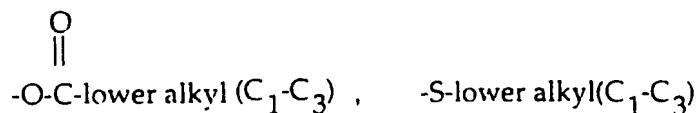
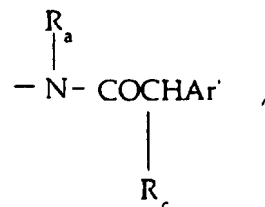
15



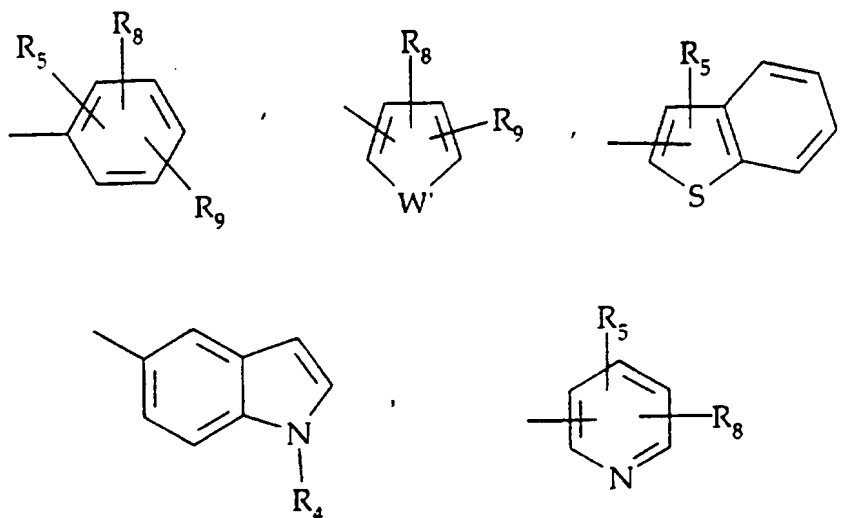
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally

substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

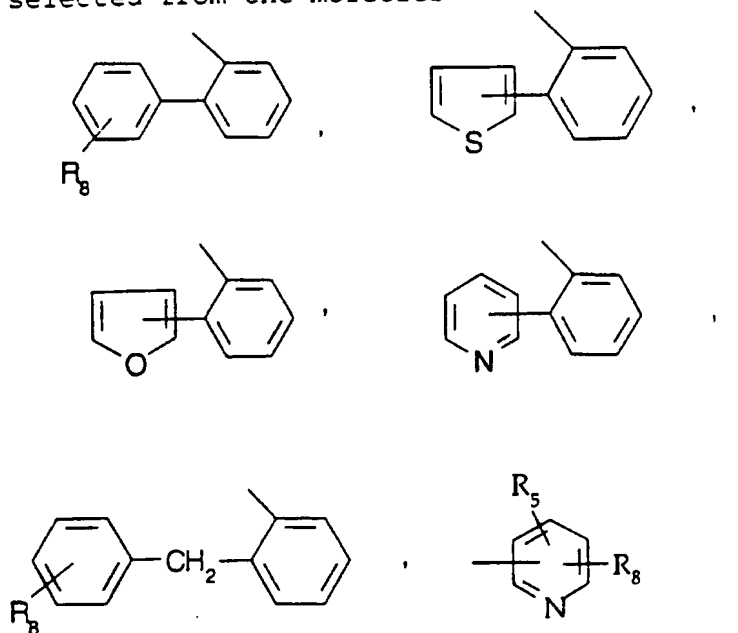
- 5 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:




- wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl,
 10 -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

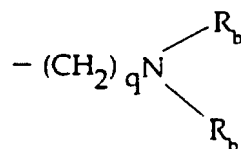


- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),
 -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)
 10 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



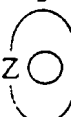
and the moiety 

represents: (1) phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, and (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N and S; (3) a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom; (4) a 5 or 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (5) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, formyl, a moiety of the formula:



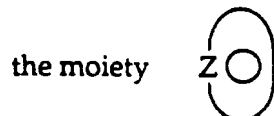
halogen or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

the moiety 

represents a phenyl ring optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl amino and n, m, W', X, Y, A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, P₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

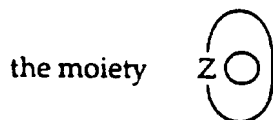
3. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



5 represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom and n,
m, W', X, Y, A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈,
R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

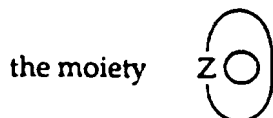
4. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

10



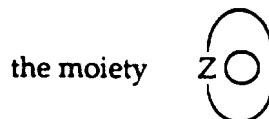
represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms and Y,
A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
15 R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

5. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
20 heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom and Y,
A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

6. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

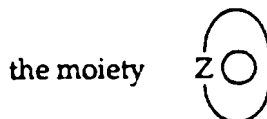


25

represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one oxygen heteroatom and Y,

A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

7. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

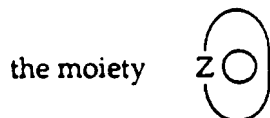


5

represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom and Y,
A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

10

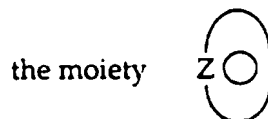
8. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



15

represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom and Y,
A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

9. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

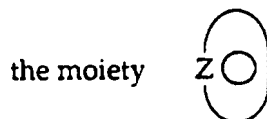


20

represents a fused 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one sulfur
heteroatom and Y, A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆,
R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim
1.

25

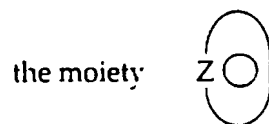
10. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



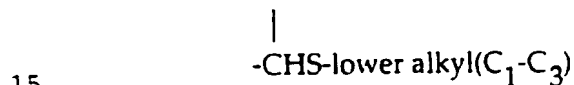
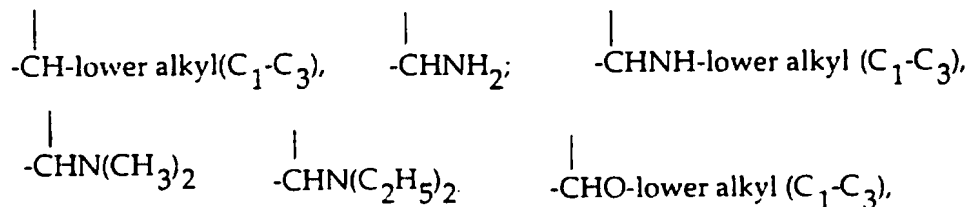
represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one oxygen
heteroatom and Y, A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆,
R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim

5 1.

11. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



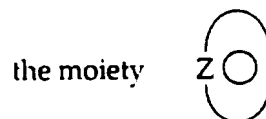
10 represents a phenyl ring, optionally substituted by one
or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl,
halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and (C₁-C₃) lower
alkyl amino, Y is selected from -CH₂-,



and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉,
R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

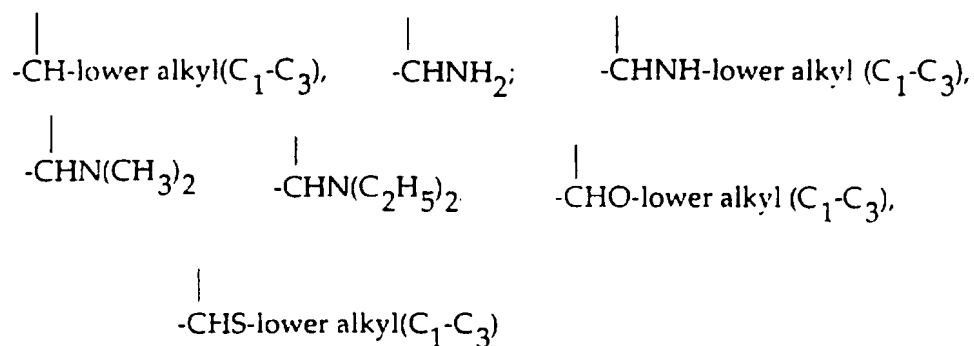
12. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

20



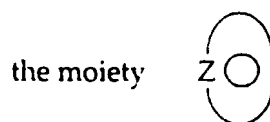
represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is
selected from -CH₂-,

25

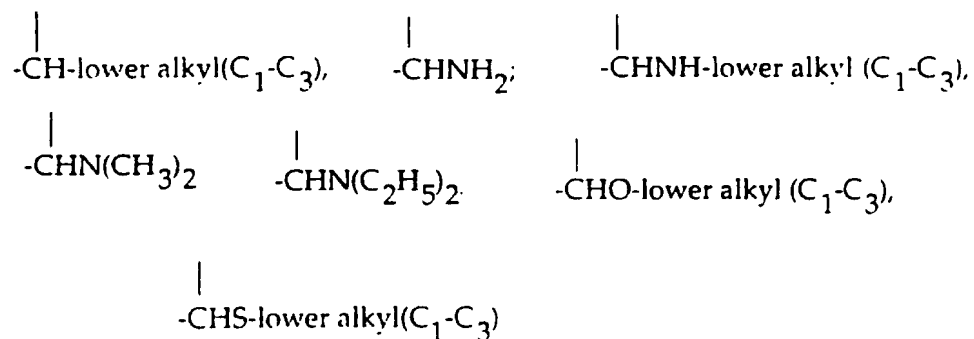


and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

5 13. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

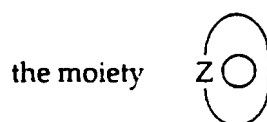


10 represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Z is selected from -CH₂-,

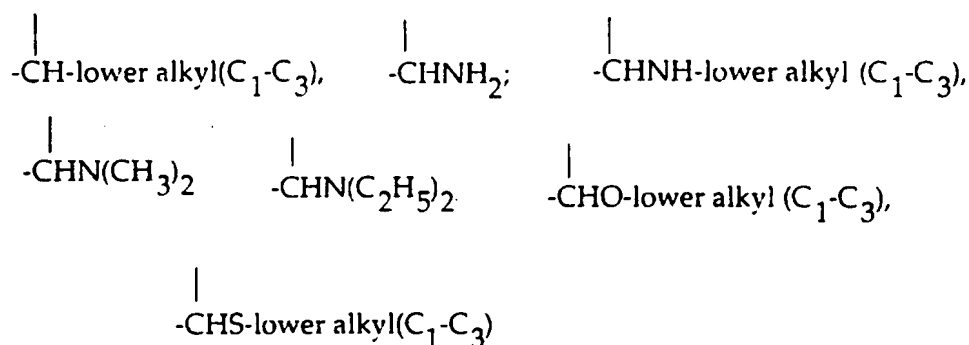


15 and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

14. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

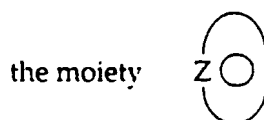


represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom wherein Y
5 is selected from -CH₂-,

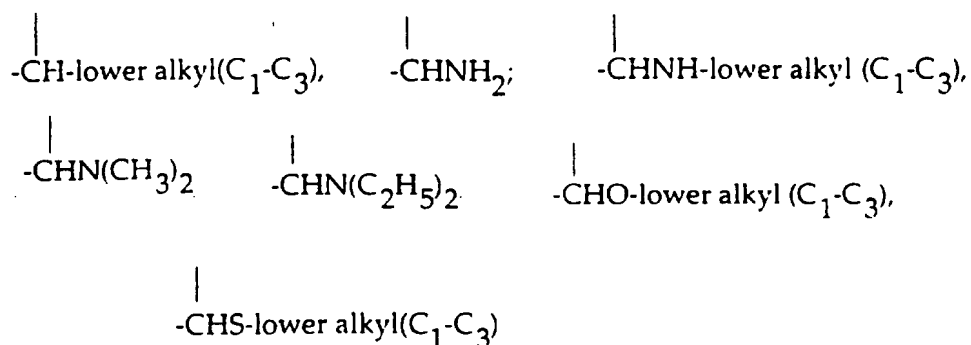


and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
10 R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

15. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

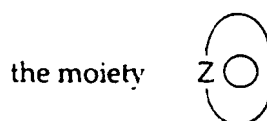


represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
15 heterocyclic ring having one oxygen heteroatom wherein Y
is selected from -CH₂-,

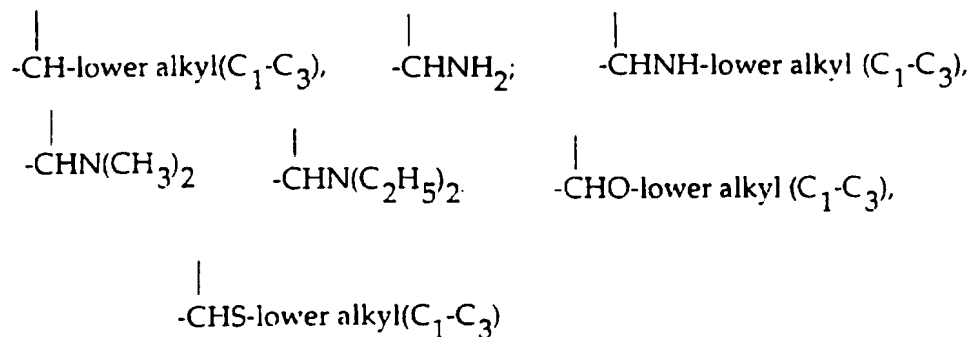


and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

5 16. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

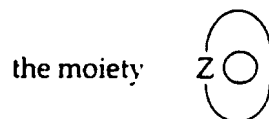


10 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is
selected from -CH₂-,

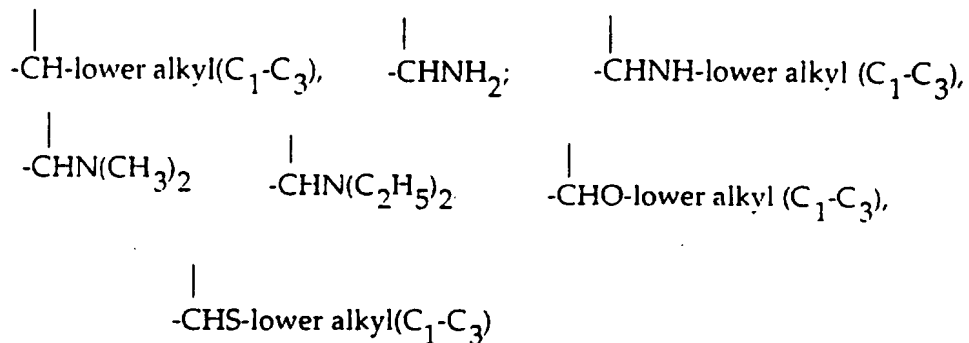


15 and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

17. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Y is
5 selected from -CH₂-,

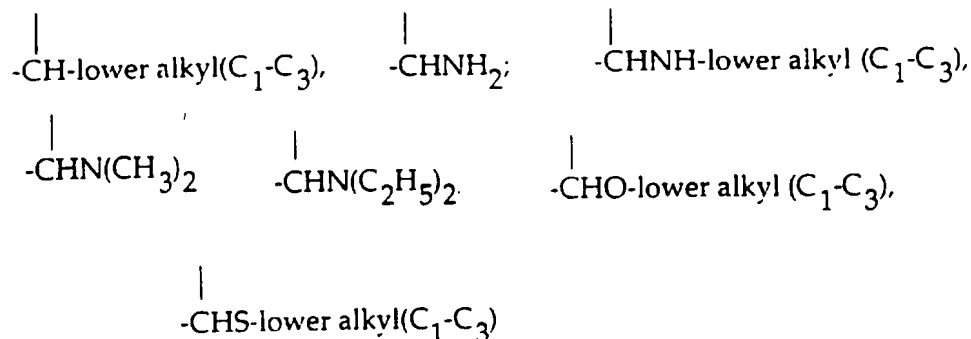


and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

10 18. A compound according to Claim wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
15 heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one sulfur
heteroatom, Y is selected from -CH₂-,



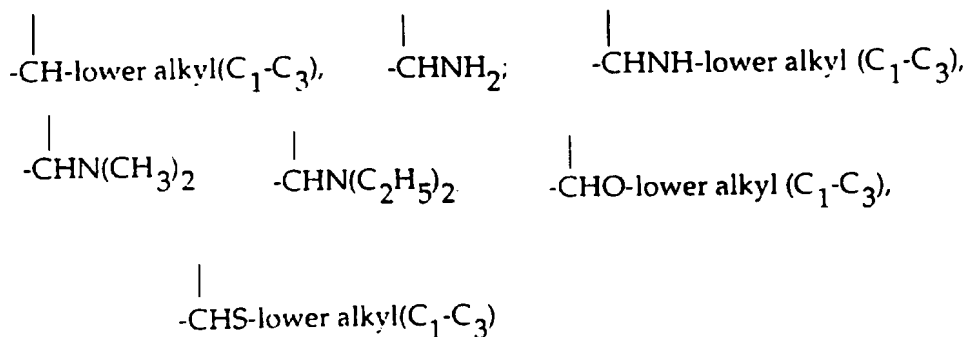
and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

5 19. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

the moiety

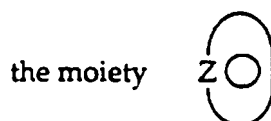


represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one oxygen
10 heteroatom. Y is selected from -CH₂-,



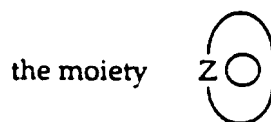
and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
15 R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

20. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



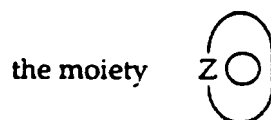
represents a phenyl ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl amino, Y is -(CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

21. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



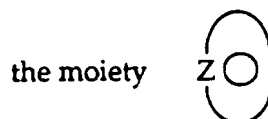
represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is -(CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

22. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



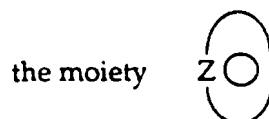
represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Y is -(CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

23. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



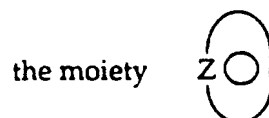
represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom, Y is -
5 (CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅,
R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in
Claim 1.

24. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



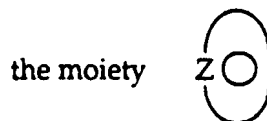
10 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one oxygen heteroatom, Y is -
(CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅,
R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in
15 Claim 1.

25. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



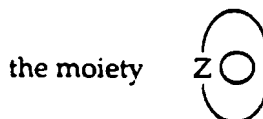
20 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is -
(CH₂)_n, n is zero and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅,
R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in
Claim 1.

26. A compound according to claim 1 wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Y is
5 $-(CH_2)_n$, n is zero and A-B, R_a , R_b , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 ,
 R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as previously defined in
Claim 1.

27. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



10

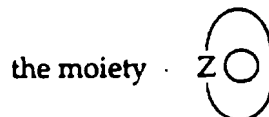
represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one sulfur
heteroatom, Y is $-(CH_2)_n$, n is zero and A-B, R_a , R_b , R_1 ,
 R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as
15 previously defined in Claim 1.

28. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



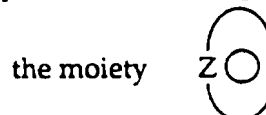
20 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one oxygen
heteroatom, Y is $-(CH_2)_n$, n is zero and A-B, R_a , R_b , R_1 ,
 R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as
previously defined in Claim 1.

29. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a phenyl or substituted phenyl ring, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)
5 and and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉,
R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

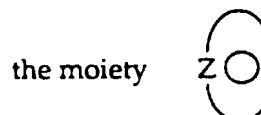
30. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
10 heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)
and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

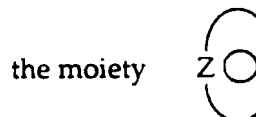
31. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

15



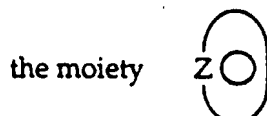
represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, and N-lower alkyl
20 (C₁-C₃) and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈,
R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

32. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, and N-lower alkyl
(C₁-C₃) and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈,
5 R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

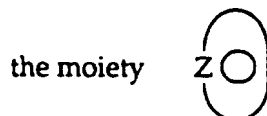
33. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
10 heterocyclic ring having one oxygen heteroatom, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)
and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

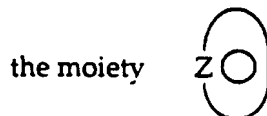
34. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein

15



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)
20 and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀,
R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

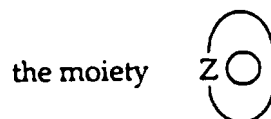
35. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



25 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated)
heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen heteroatoms, Y is
selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)

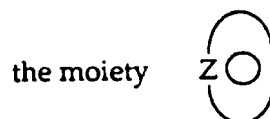
and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

36. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



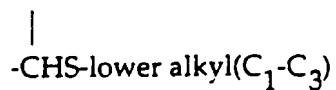
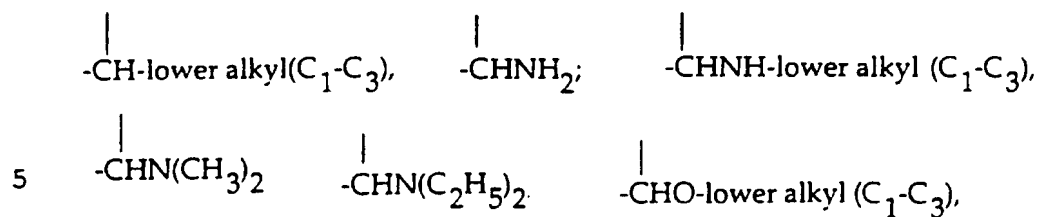
5 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one sulfur heteroatom, Y is selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅,
10 R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 1.

37. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein



15 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen and one oxygen heteroatom, Y is selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in
20 Claim 1.

38. A compound according to Claim wherein Y is selected from -(CH₂)_n-,



10

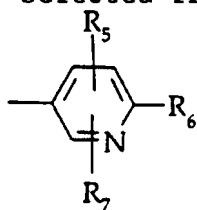
wherein n is an integer zero or one;

R₃ is the moiety

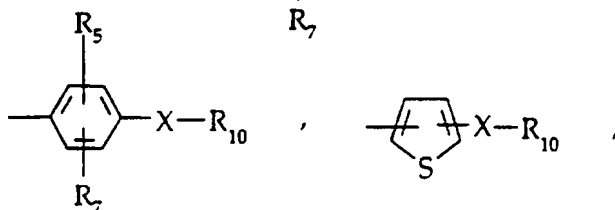


15

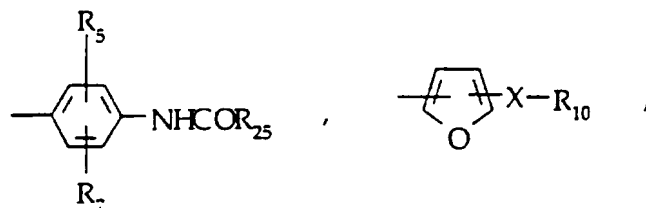
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group



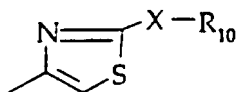
20



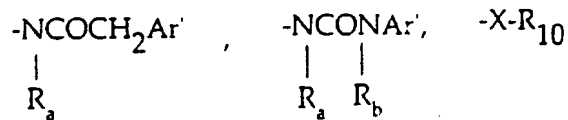
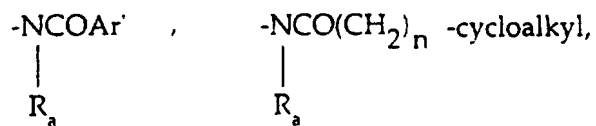
25



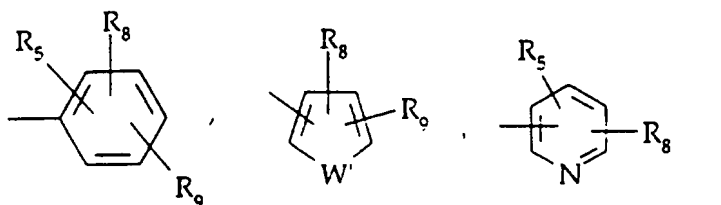
30



and R₆ is selected from the group

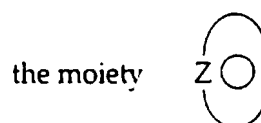


wherein Ar' is selected from the group



5

W' is O or S; A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X, cycloalkyl and

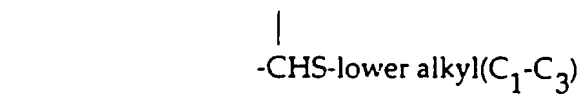
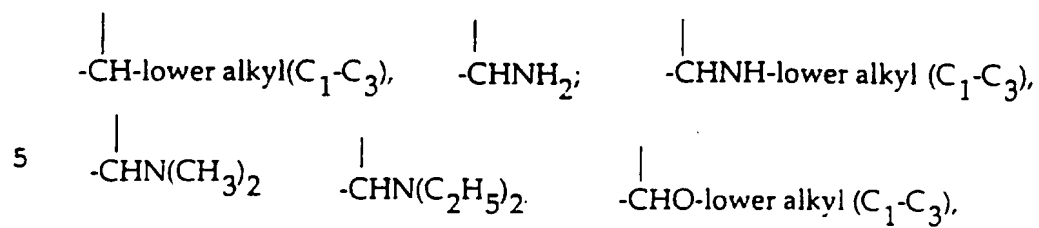


10

are as previously defined in Claim 1.

39. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is selected from -CH₂-,

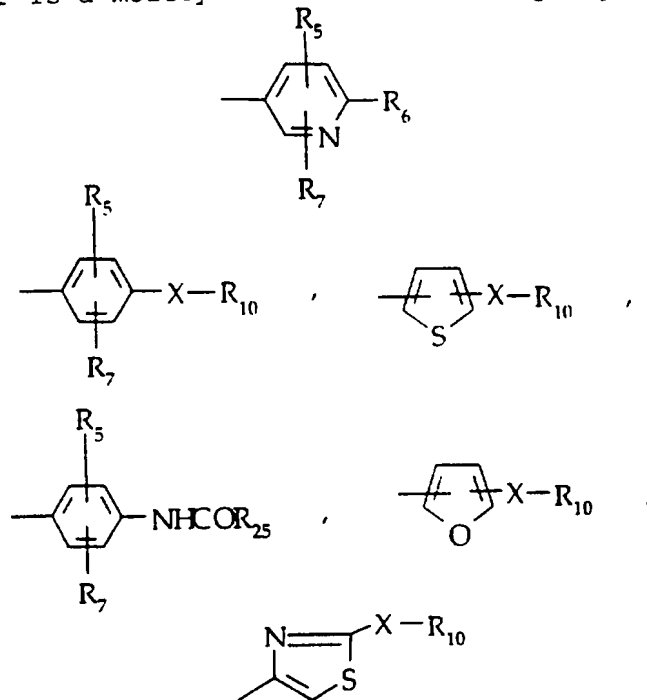
15



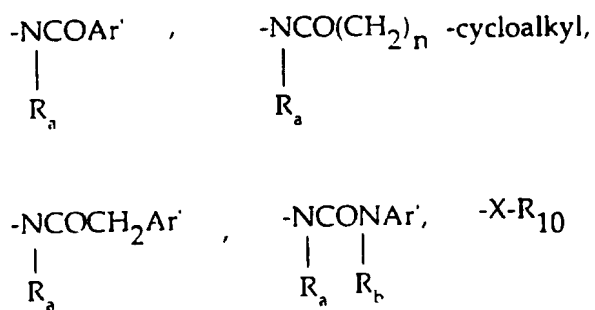
R₃ is the moiety



wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

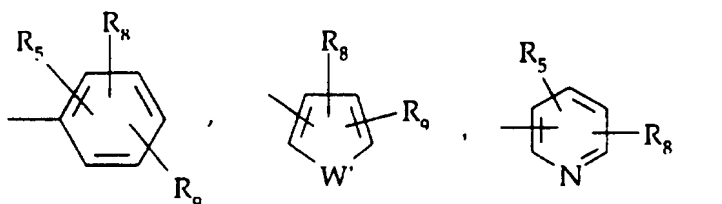


5 and R₆ is selected from the group



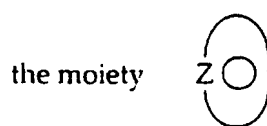
wherein Ar' is selected from the group

10



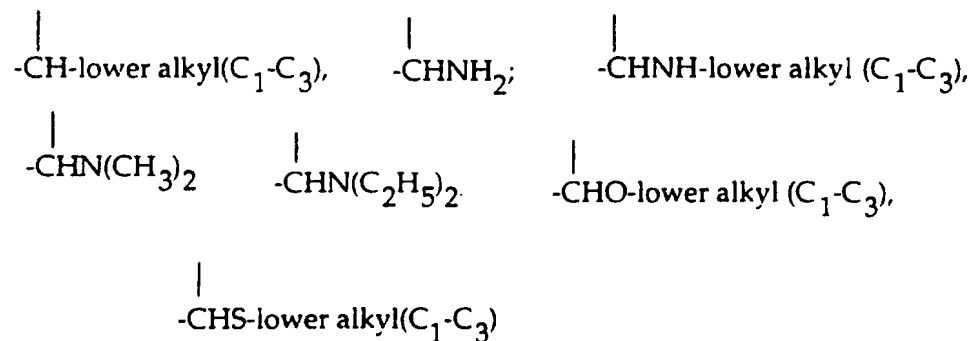
W' is O or S; A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉,
R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl and

5



are as previously defined in Claim 1.

40. a compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y
10 is selected from -CH₂-,

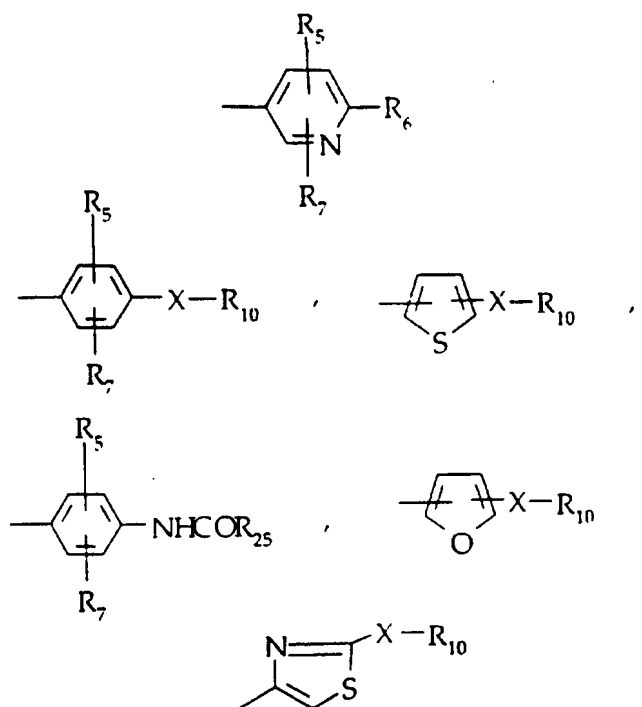


R₃ is the moiety

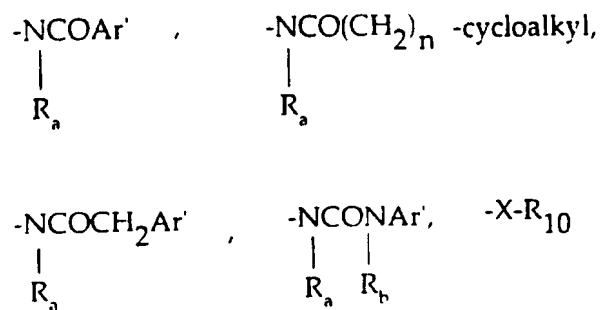


15

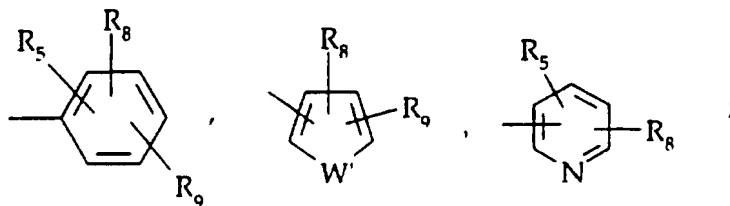
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group



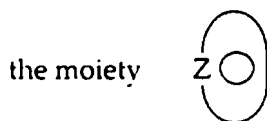
and R₆ is selected from the group



wherein Ar' is selected from the group



5 and W' is O or S; and



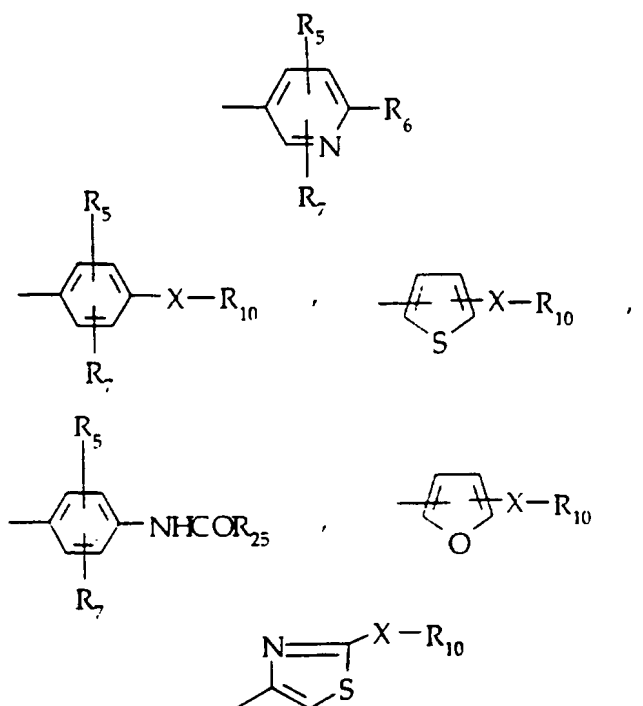
10 represents a phenyl ring optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl amino and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

15 41. A compound according to claim 1 wherein Y is -(CH₂)_n-, wherein n is an integer zero; R₃ is the moiety

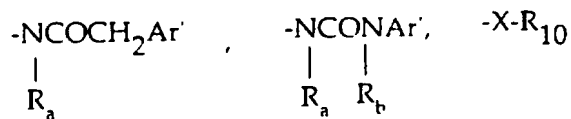
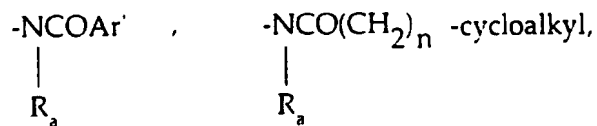


wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

20

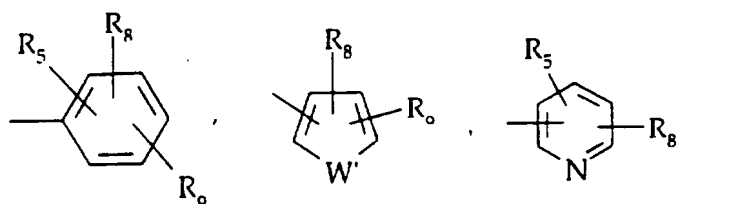


and R_6 is selected from the group

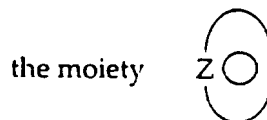


5

wherein Ar' is selected from the group



10 and W' is O or S; and

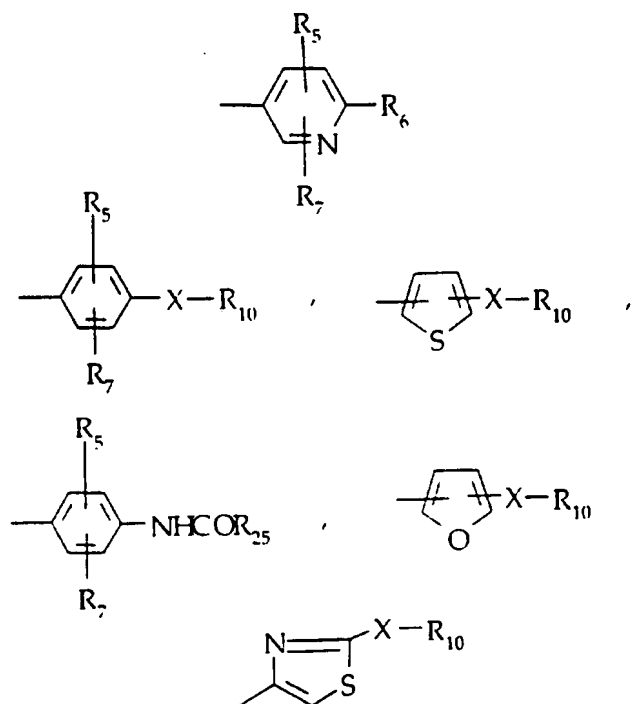


represents a phenyl ring optionally substituted by one
 5 or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl,
 halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl amino and A-B, R_a, R_b,
 R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl
 are as previously defined in Claim 1.

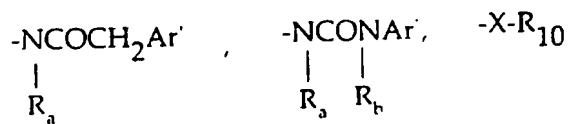
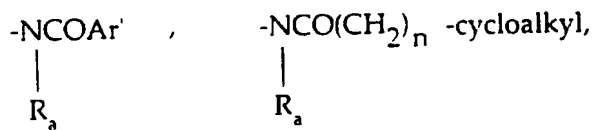
42. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y
 10 is selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃ and N-lower alkyl
 (C₁-C₃);
 R₃ is the moiety



15 wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

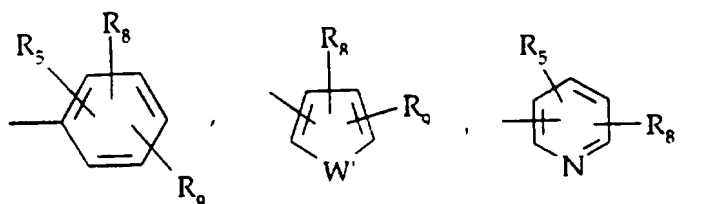


and R_6 is selected from the group

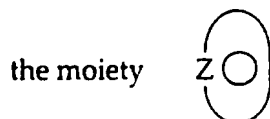


5

wherein Ar' is selected from the group



and W' is O or S; and



represents a phenyl ring optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl amino and A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

43. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y
10 is -(CH₂)_n-; n is an integer zero;

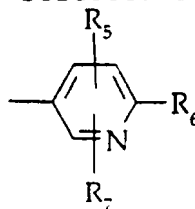
R₃ is the moiety



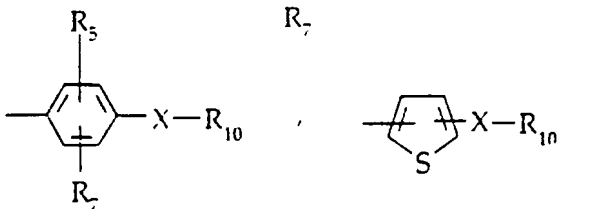
5

wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

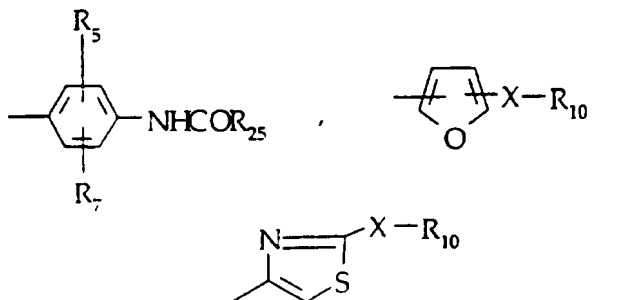
10



15

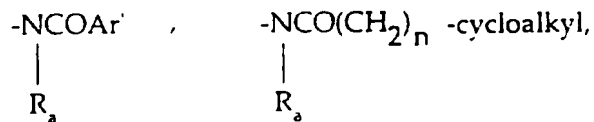


20

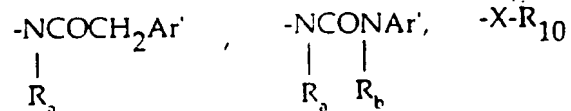


25

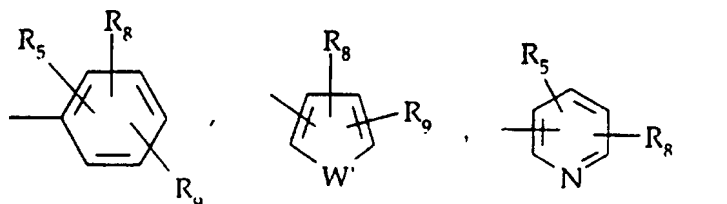
and R₆ is selected from the group



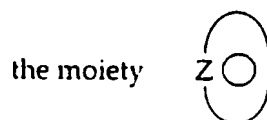
30



wherein Ar' is selected from the group



and W' is O or S; and



5

represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

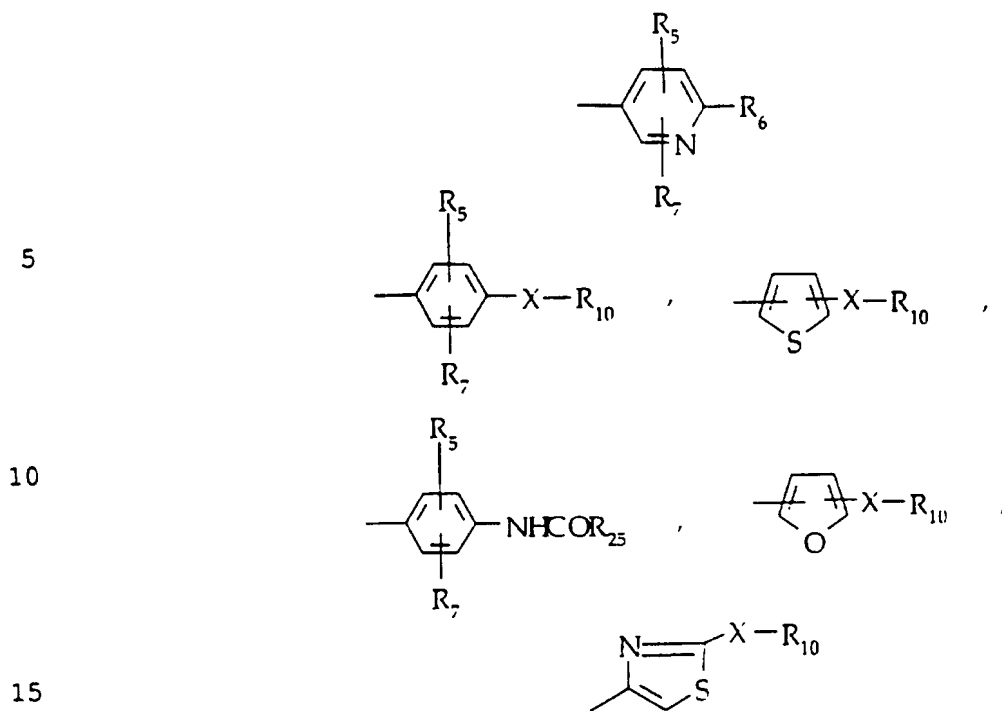
10

44. A compound according to claim 1 wherein Y is -CH₂-; R₃ is the moiety

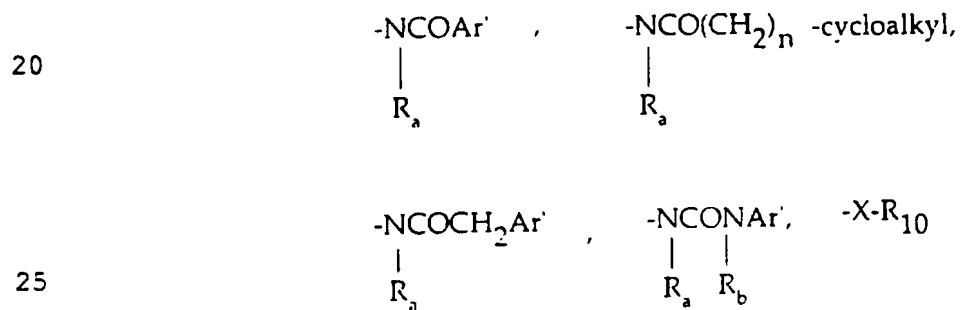


15

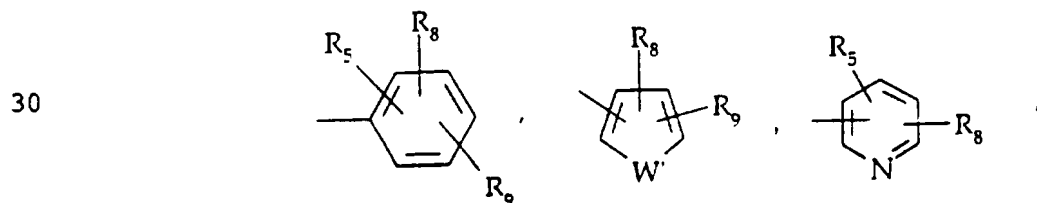
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group



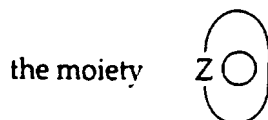
and R_6 is selected from the group



wherein Ar' is selected from the group



and W' is O or S; and

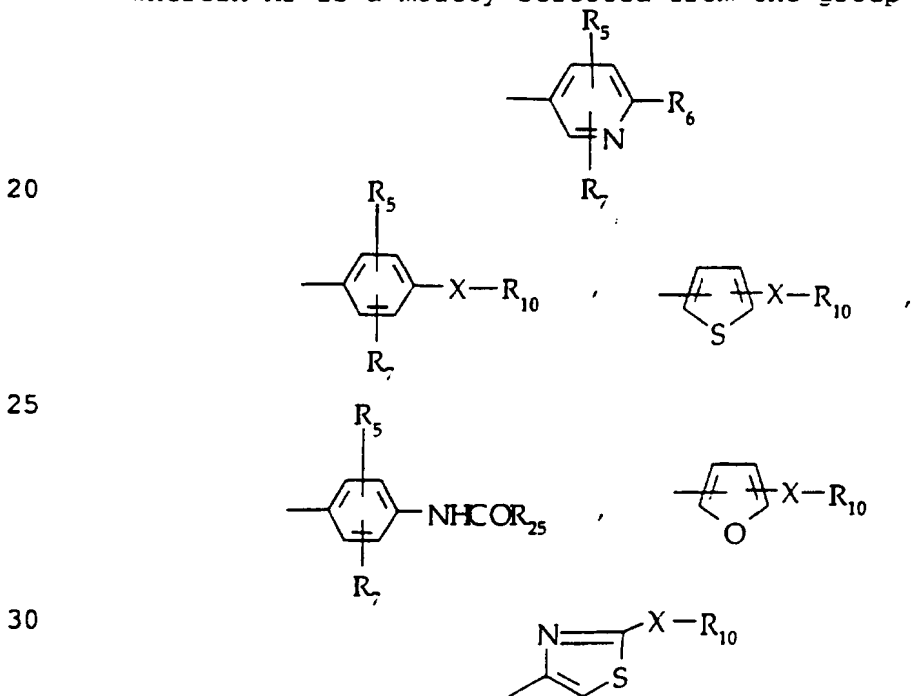


5 represents a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen heteroatom A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

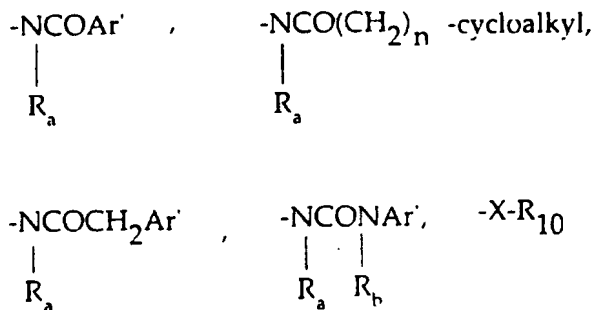
10 45. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is -(CH₂)_n-; n is an integer zero; R₃ is the moiety



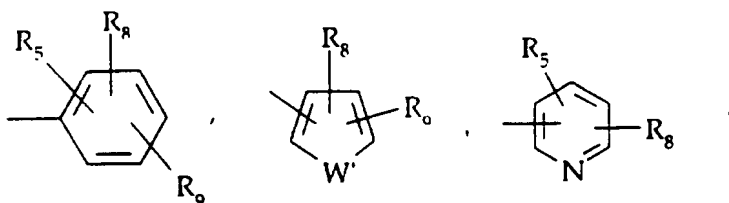
15 wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group



and R₆ is selected from the group

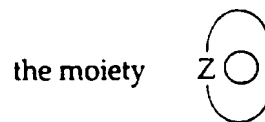


wherein Ar' is selected from the group



5

and W' is O or S; and



10 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

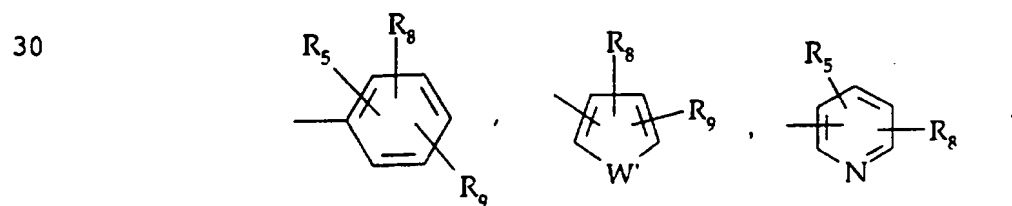
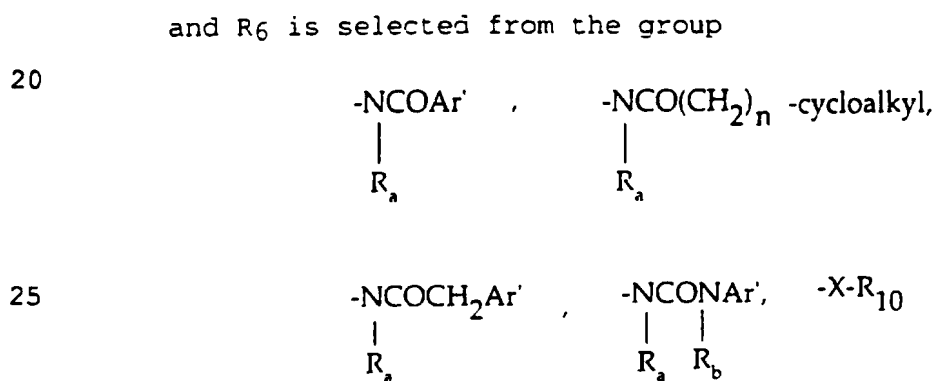
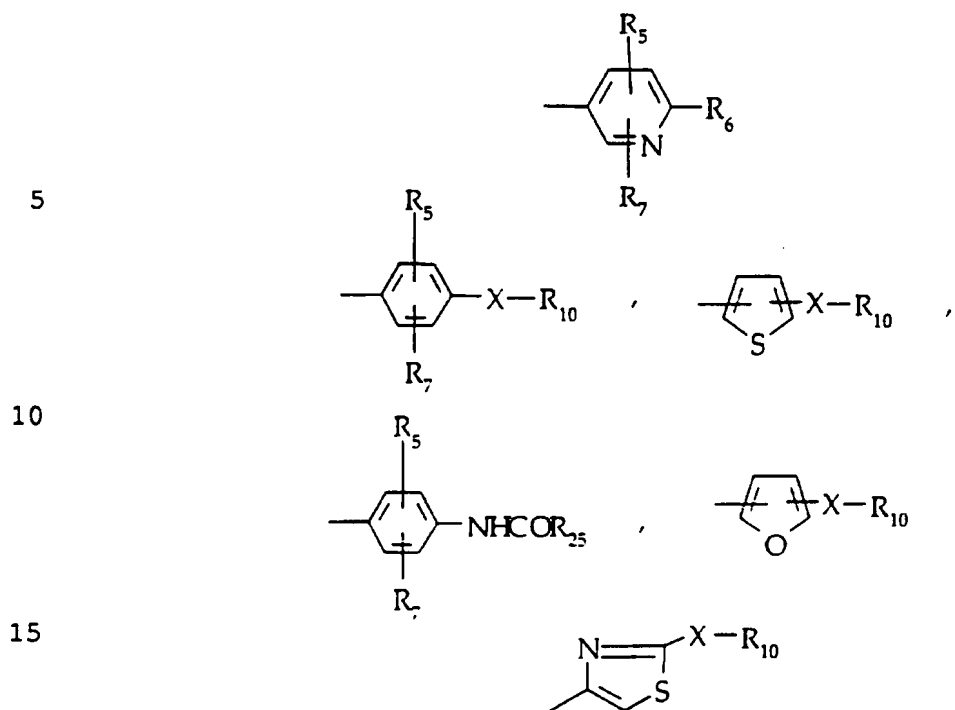
46. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y

15 is -CH₂-;
R₃ is the moiety

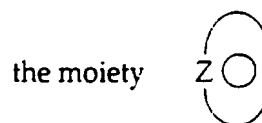


wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

20



and W' is O or S; and



5 represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

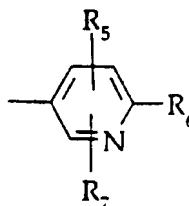
10 47. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein Y is selected from O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃);
R₃ is the moiety



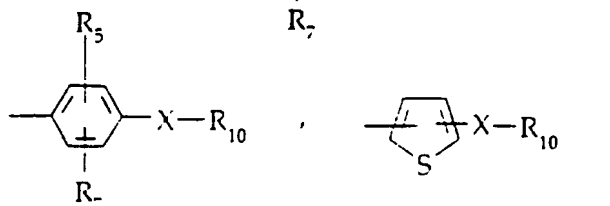
15

wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

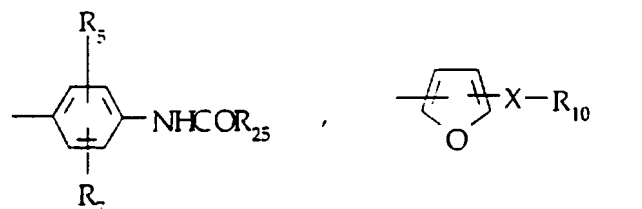
20



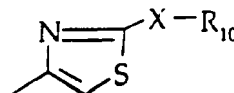
25



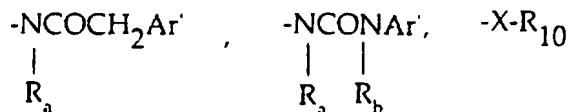
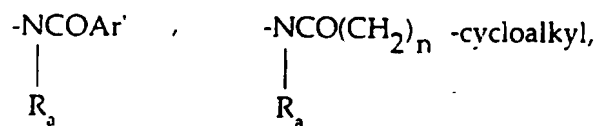
30



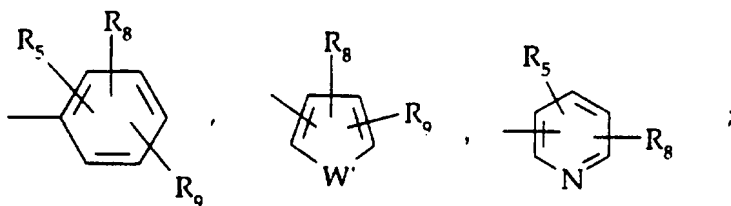
35



and R₆ is selected from the group

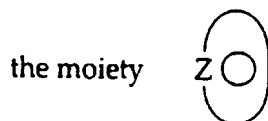


wherein Ar' is selected from the group



5

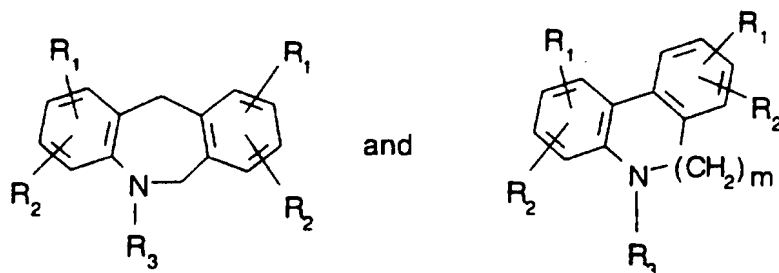
and W' is O or S; and



represents a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one sulfur heteroatom A-B, R_a, R_b, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅, X and cycloalkyl are as previously defined in Claim 1.

48. A compound selected from those of the formulae:

15



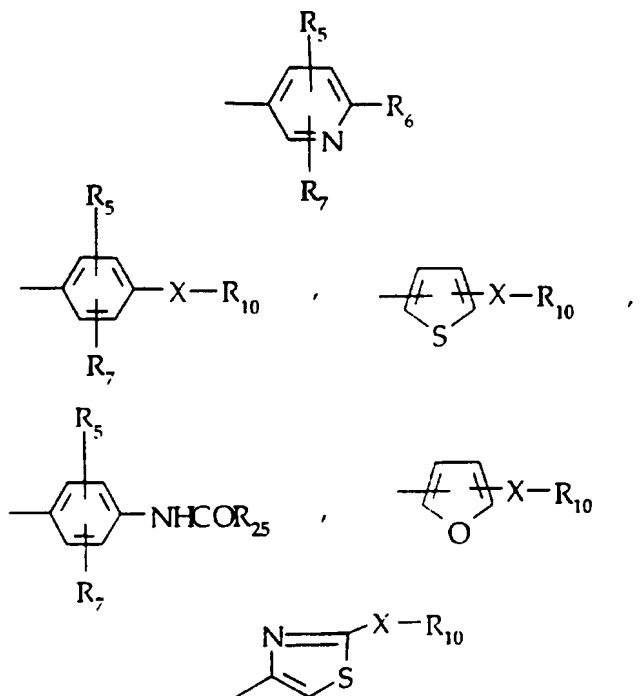
wherein m is an integer one or two;

- R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)];
 R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are
 10 methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
 R₃ is the moiety:

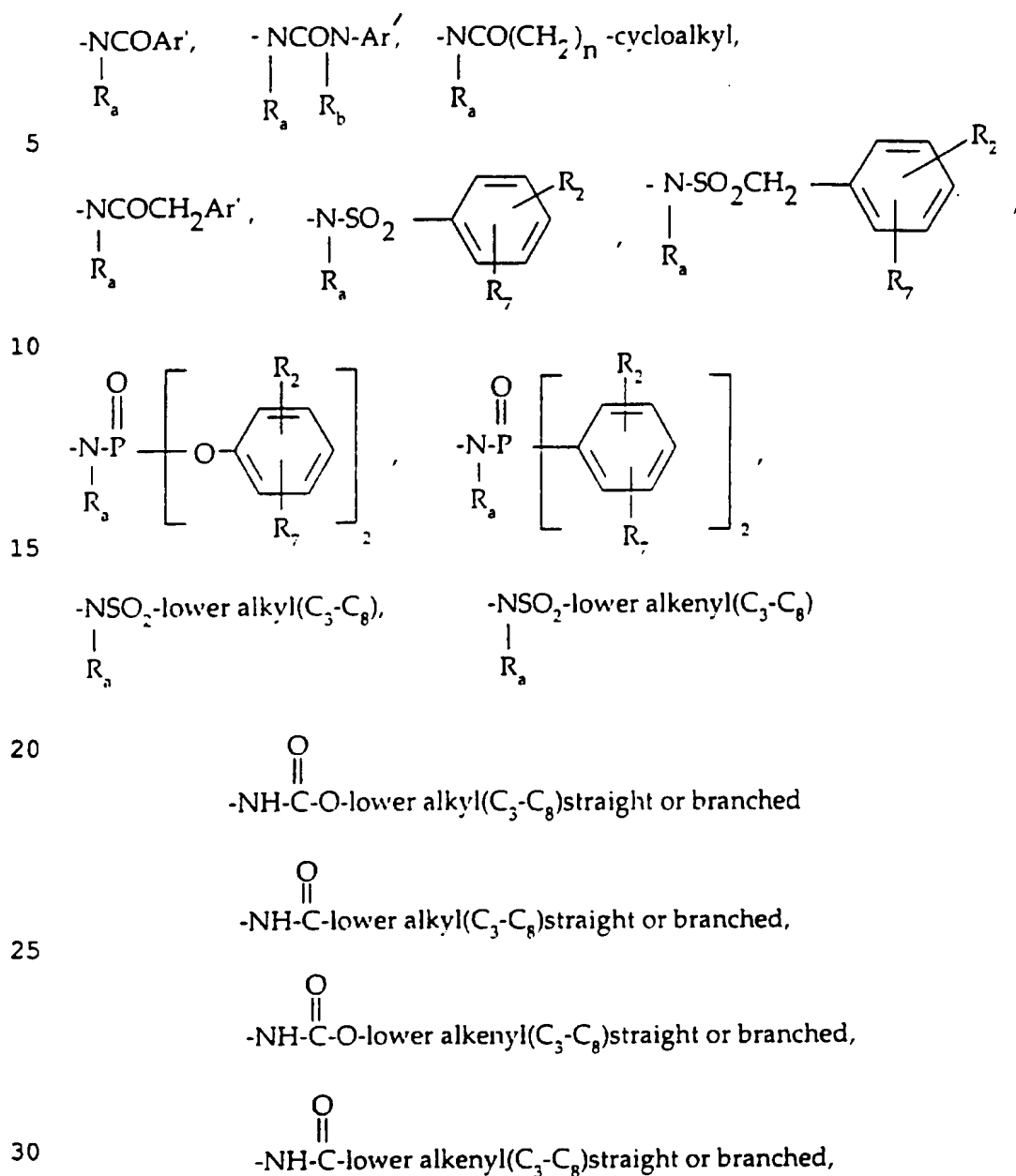


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

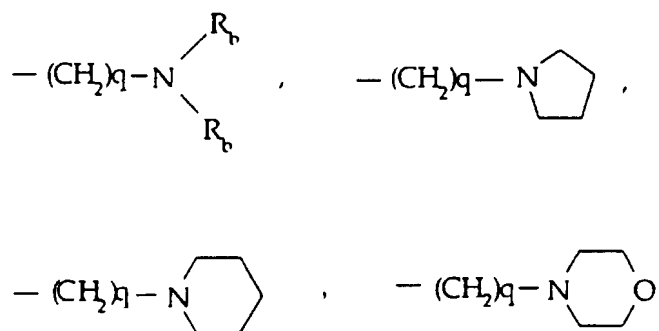
15



R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen.
 R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



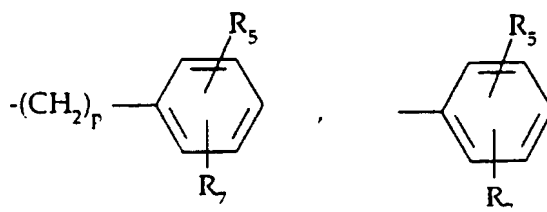
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



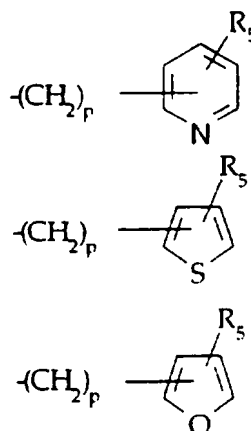
-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅; and

5 (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀, wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



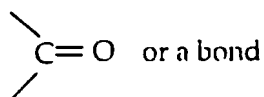
10



and p is zero to three;

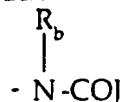
X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

15



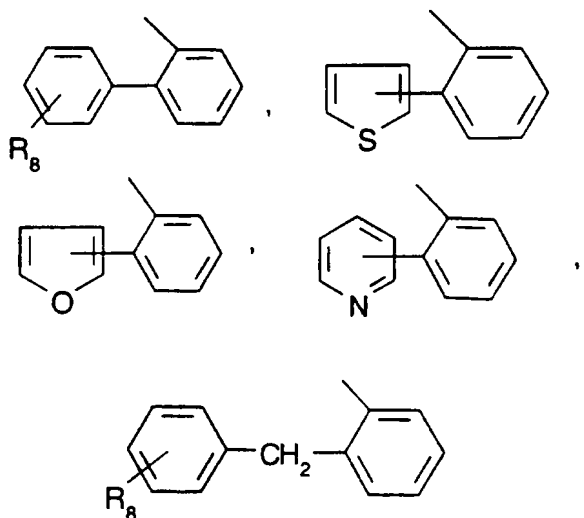
R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

(c) a moiety of the formula:

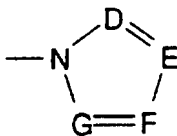


5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

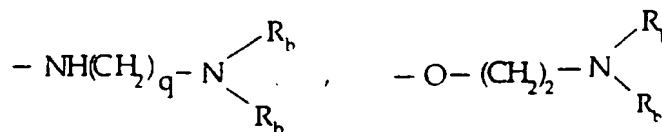
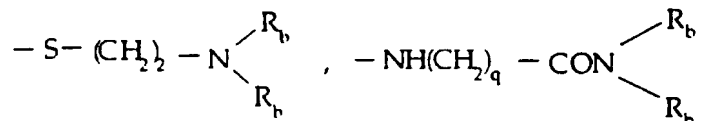
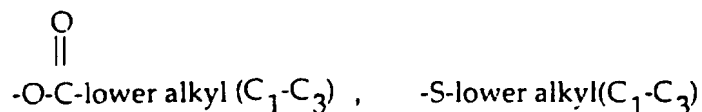
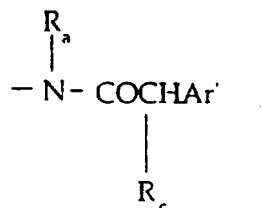


15 or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy, -CO₂- lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

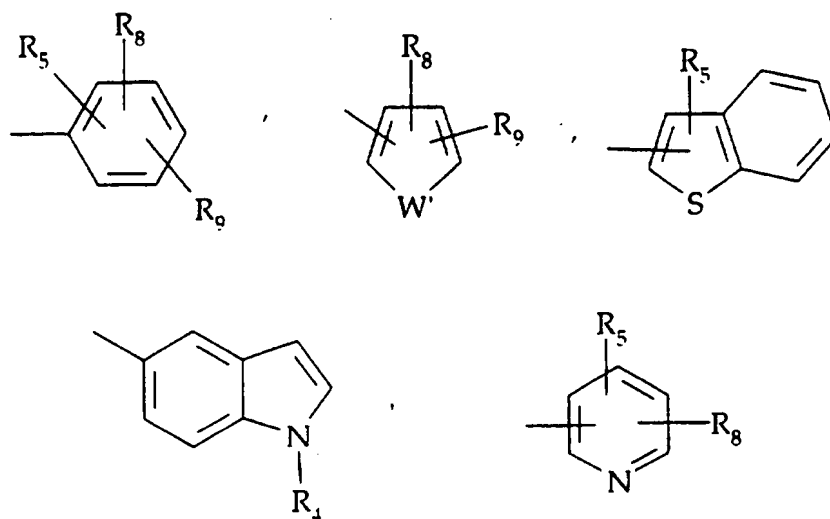


10

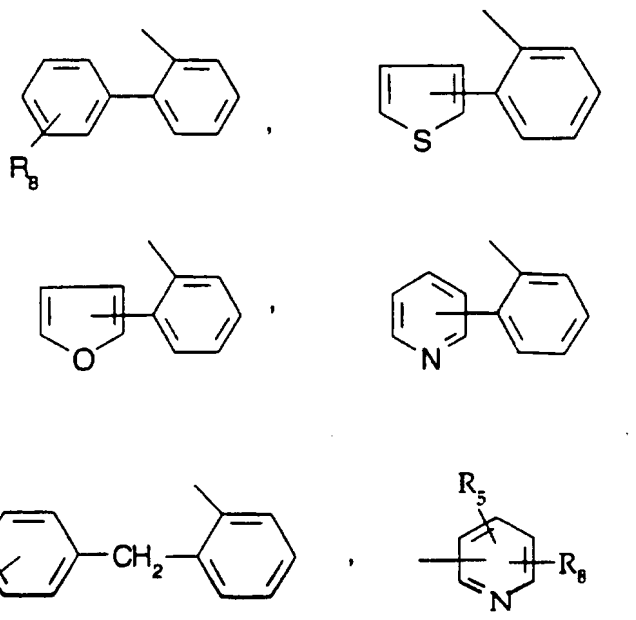
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH, R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

Ar' is a moiety selected from the group

15



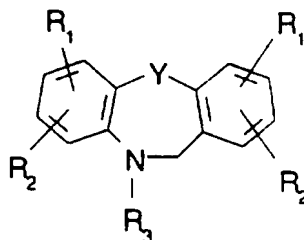
- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 5 NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



- 10 W' is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂ lower

alkyl(C₁-C₃) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

49. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is selected from O, S, NH, and N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

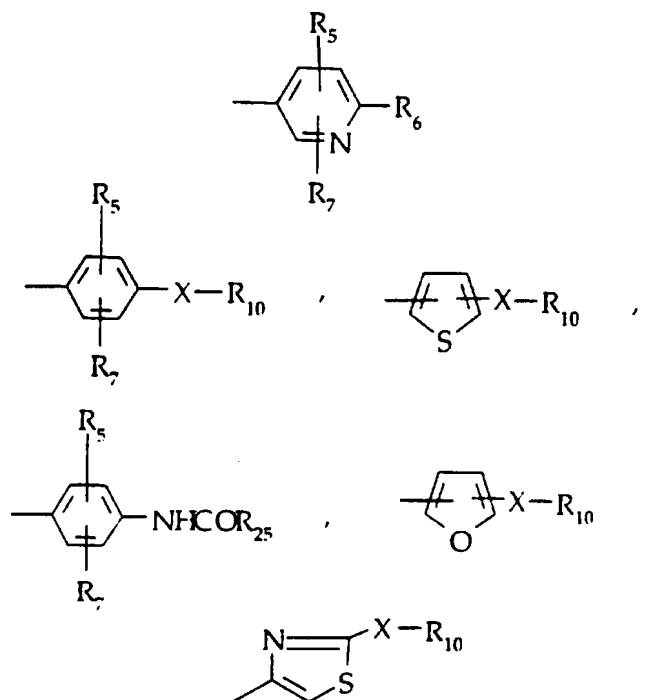
R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;

R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

R₃ is the moiety:

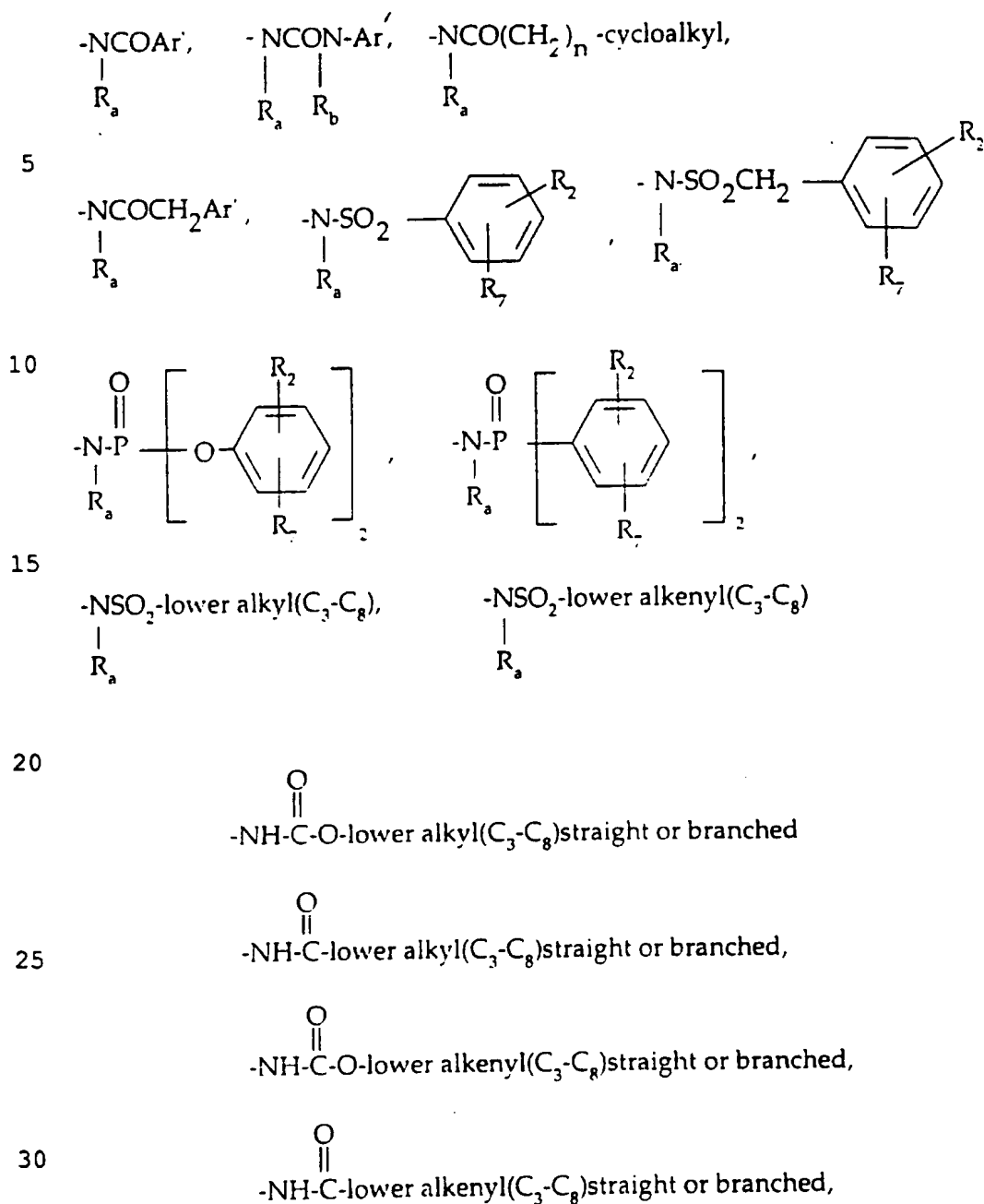


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



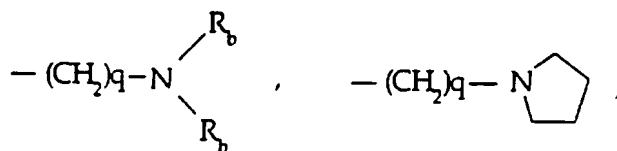
R_5 and R_7 are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen;

5 R_6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃,

35 C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5



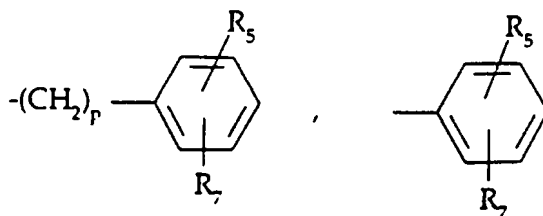
10

-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅; and

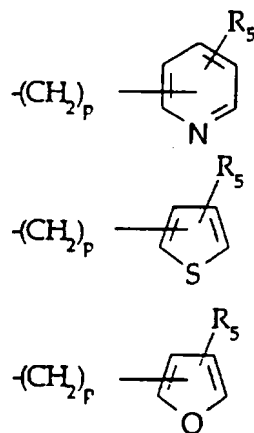
(b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀, wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),

15



20



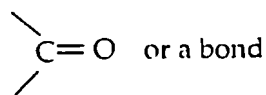
25

30

and p is zero to three;

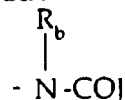
X is O, S, NH, NCH₃

35



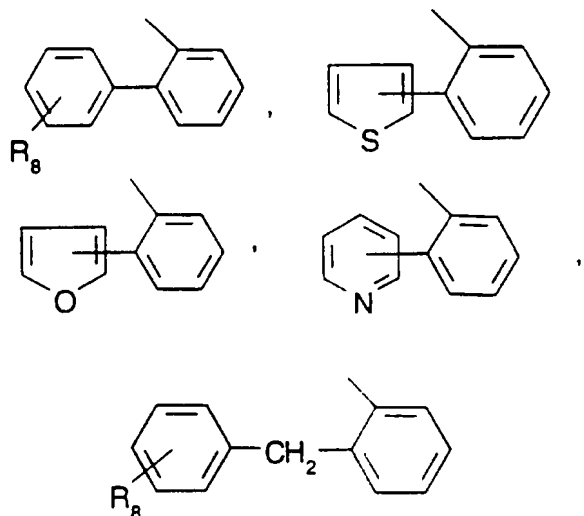
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

(c) a moiety of the formula:

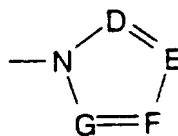


5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

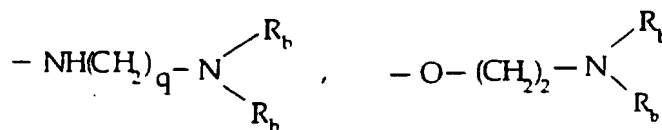
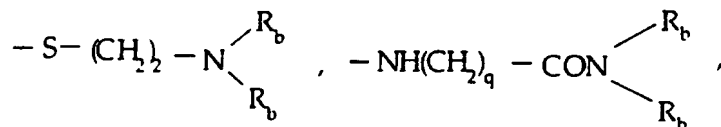
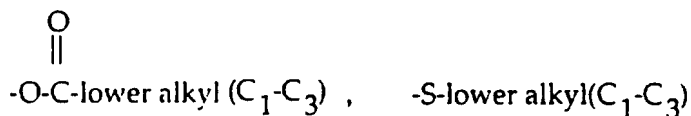
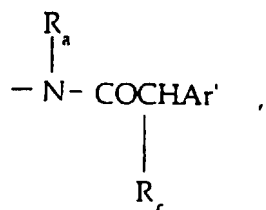


15 or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂- lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

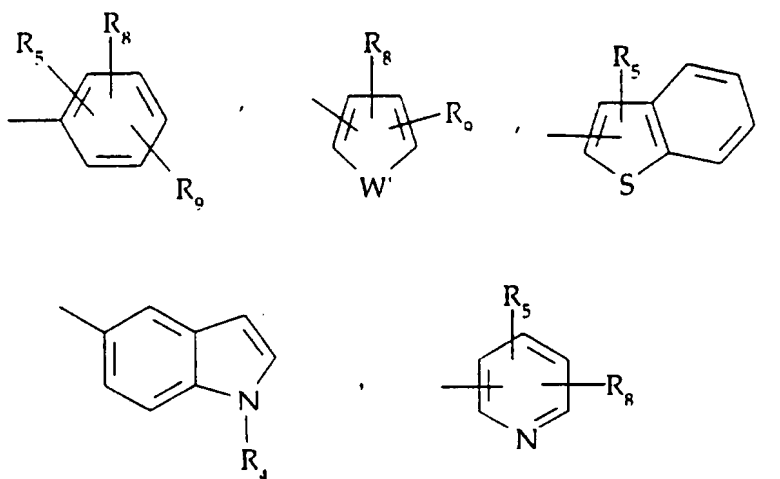


10

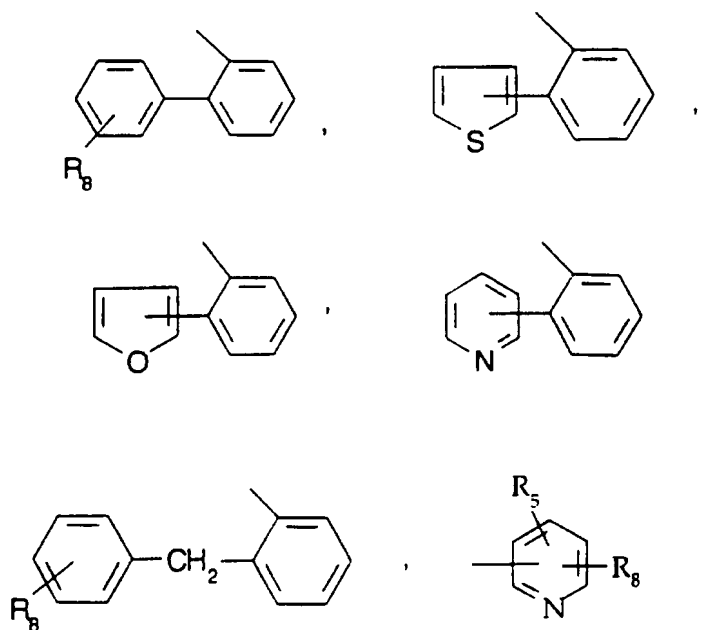
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH, R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

Ar' is a moiety selected from the group

15



- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



10

W' is O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or NSO₂ lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

- 5 50. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-
pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
51. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(6,11-Dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-
10 pyridinyl]-2-dimethylamino pyridine-3-carboxamide.
52. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-9-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
53. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
15 [(9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-9-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-dimethylamino pyridine-3-
carboxamide.
54. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepin-5-
20 yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
55. The compound according to claim 1, N-
[5[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepin-5-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-dimethylamino pyridine-3-
carboxamide.
- 25 56. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(9,10-Dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c][1]benzazepin-9-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
57. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(4,10-Dihydro-5H-thieno[3,2-c][1]benzazepin-5-
30 yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
58. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-
yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-dimethylamino pyridine-3-
carboxamide.

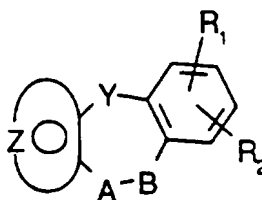
59. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-[(4,5-Dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

60. The compound according to claim 1, N-
5 [5(pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5-(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyrdinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methyl benzamide.

61. A pharmaceutical composition useful for treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water as well as congestive heart
10 failure, liver cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia in a mammal comprising a suitable pharmaceutical carrier and an effective amount of a compound of claim 1.

62. A method of treating diseases
15 characterized by excess renal reabsorption of water as well as congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia in a mammal comprising administering a compound of Claim 1 to said mammal in an
20 amount effective to alleviate the disease.

63. A process for preparing a compound of the formula:

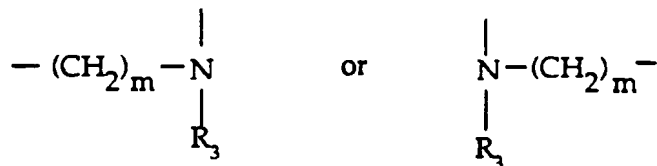


Formula 1

wherein Y is (CH₂)_n, O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, N-lower alkyl
25 (C₁-C₃), CH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH₂, CHN[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂, CHO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHS-lower (C₁-C₃),

wherein n is an integer from 0-2;

A-B is



wherein m is an integer from 1-2, provided that when Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{---}$ and n=2, m may also be zero and when n is

- 5 zero, m may also be three, provided also that when Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{---}$ and n is 2, m may not also be two;

R₁ is selected from the group of hydrogen, halogen

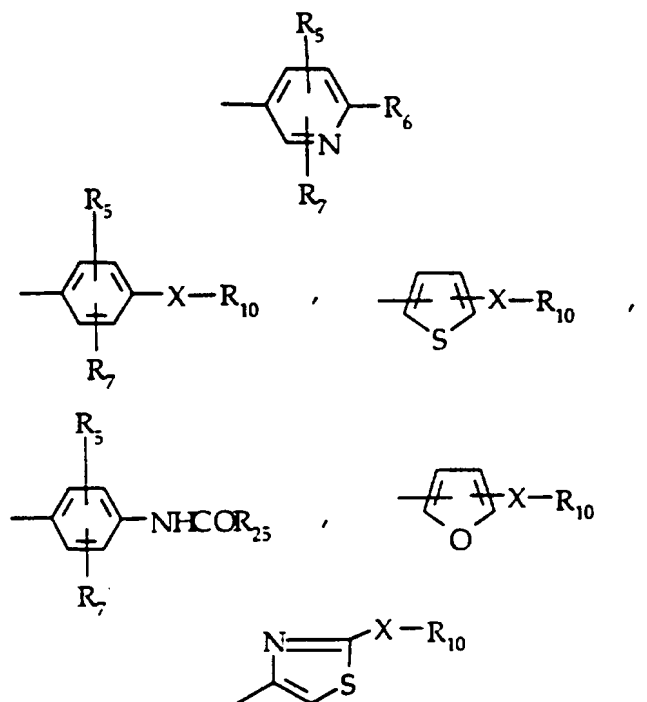
(chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, -S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂ lower

- 10 alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂, -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;

- 15 R₂ is selected from the group of hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy; R₃ is the moiety



- 20 wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

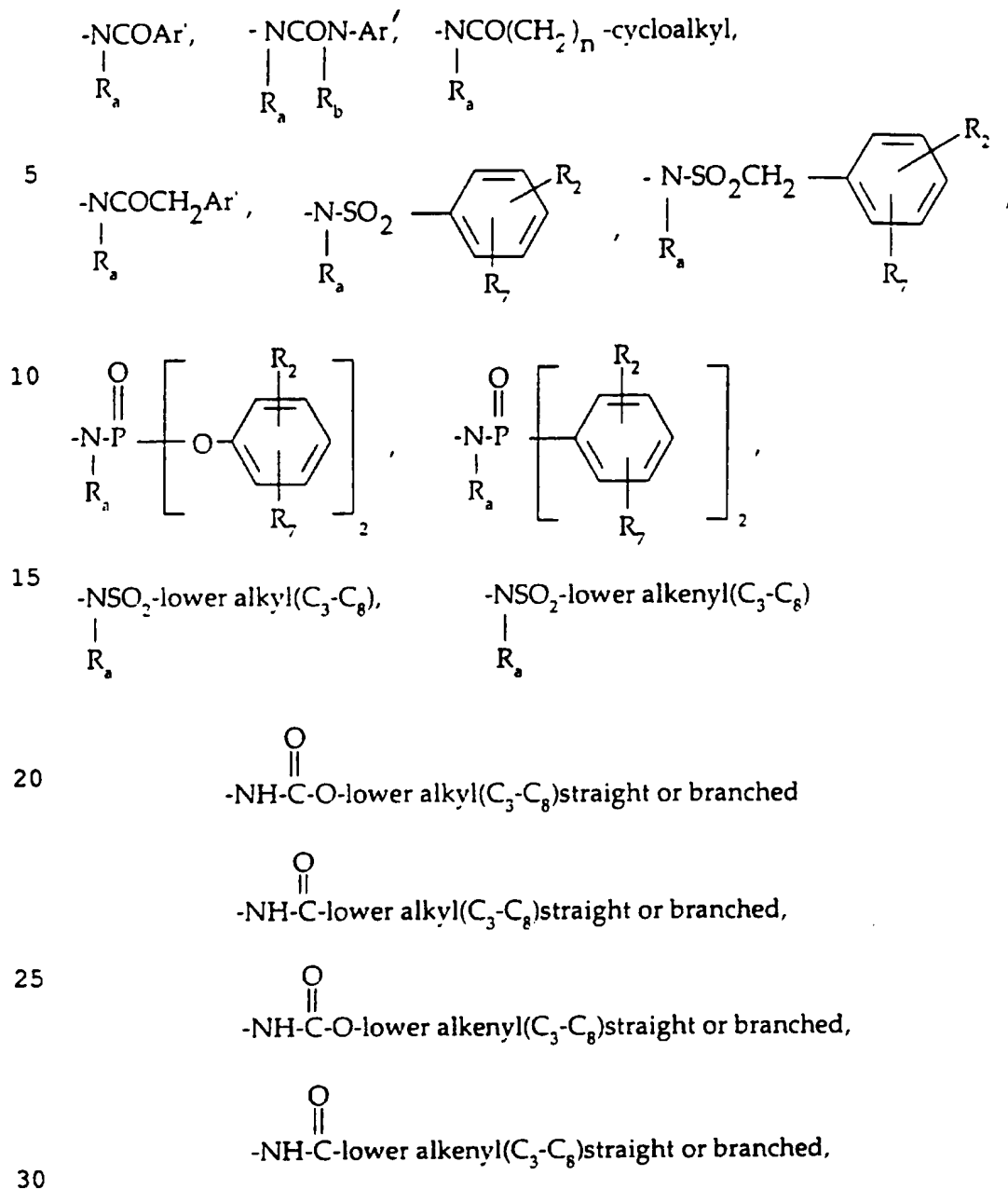


R_4 is hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3); $-CO$ -lower alkyl (C_1-C_3);

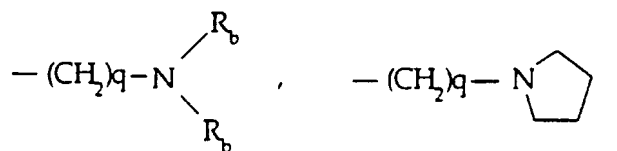
R_5 and R_7 are selected from the group, hydrogen,

5 (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen

R_6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C3 to C6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5



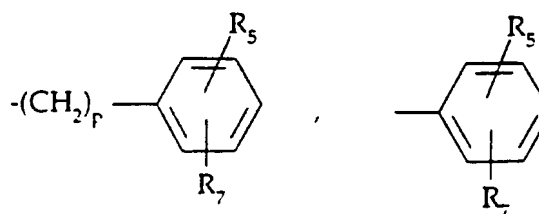
10

$-(CH_2)_2-O$ -lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or $-CH_2CH_2OH$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

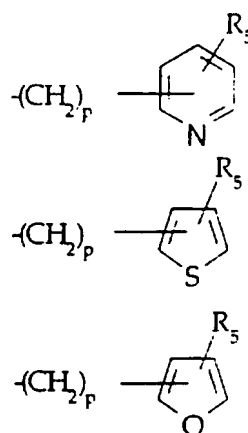
and (b) a moiety of the formula:

$-X-R_{10}$ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈),

15 $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



20

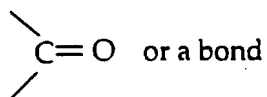


25

30

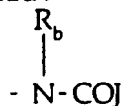
and p is zero to three;

35 X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



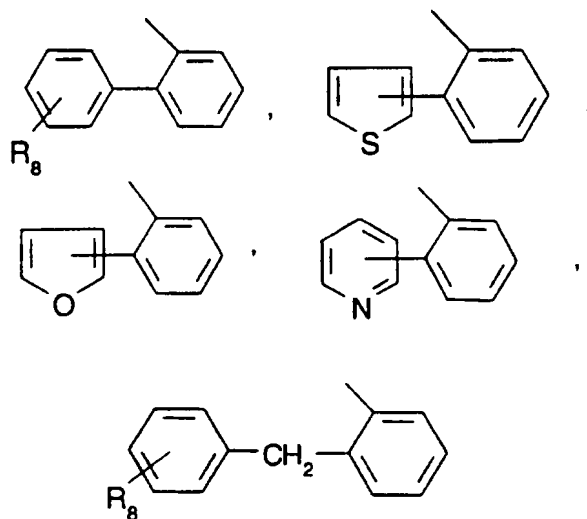
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

(c) a moiety of the formula:

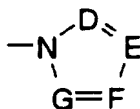


5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

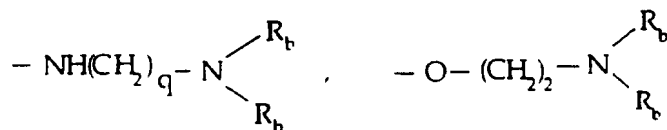
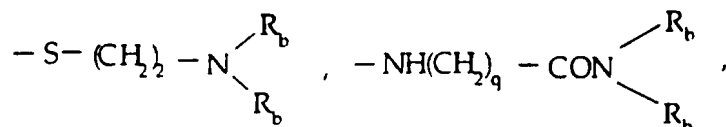
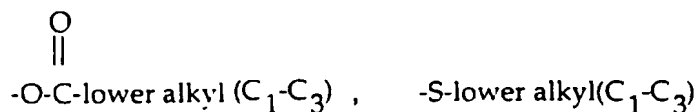
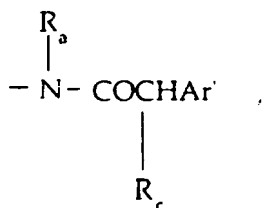


15 or -CH₂-K wherein K is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-
 5 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

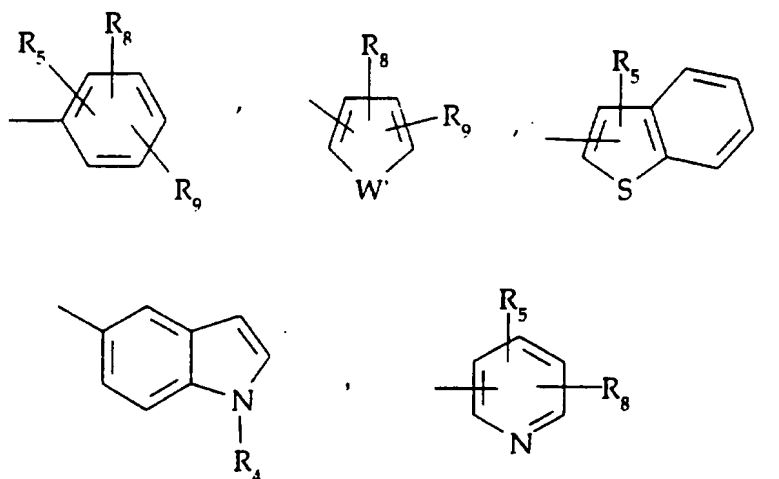


10

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

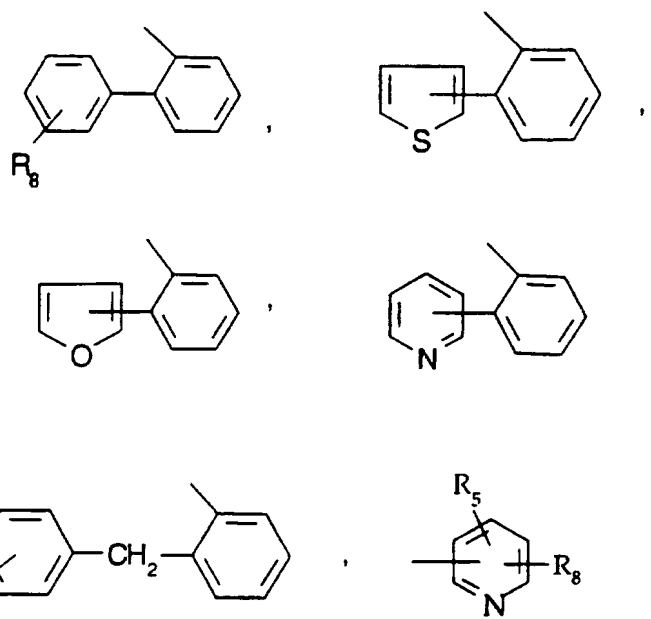
wherein Ar' is selected from the group

15

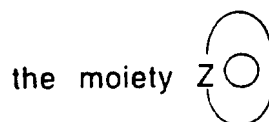


R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 5 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;

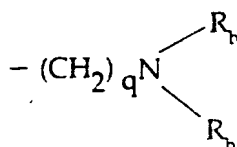
R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



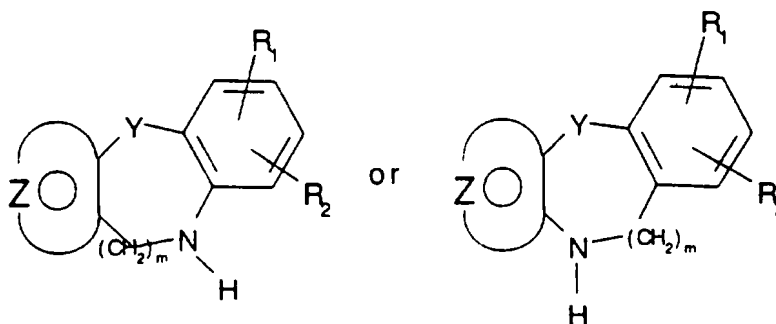
10 W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),
 -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);



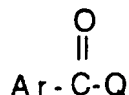
represents: (1) phenyl or substituted phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from
 5 (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, and (C₁-C₃)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N and S; (3) a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen
 10 atom; (4) a 5 or 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (5) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic
 15 rings are optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, formyl, a moiety of the formula:



20 halogen or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy;
 which comprises reacting a compound of the formulae:

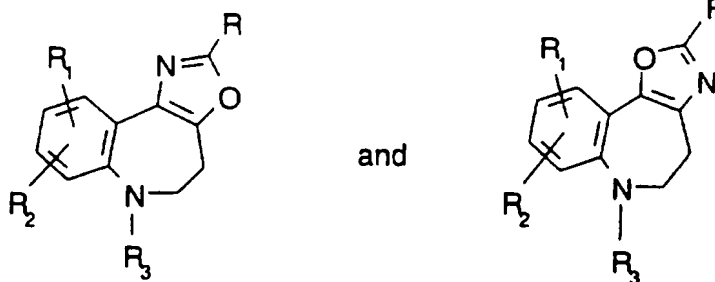


with a compound of the formula:



wherein the moiety represented by the formula is an
 5 aracyl chloride or an aryl carboxylic acid which has been
 activated by conversion to a mixed anhydride or
 activated with a peptide coupling reagent to give
 compounds of the Formula I.

64. A compound selected from those of the
 10 formula:

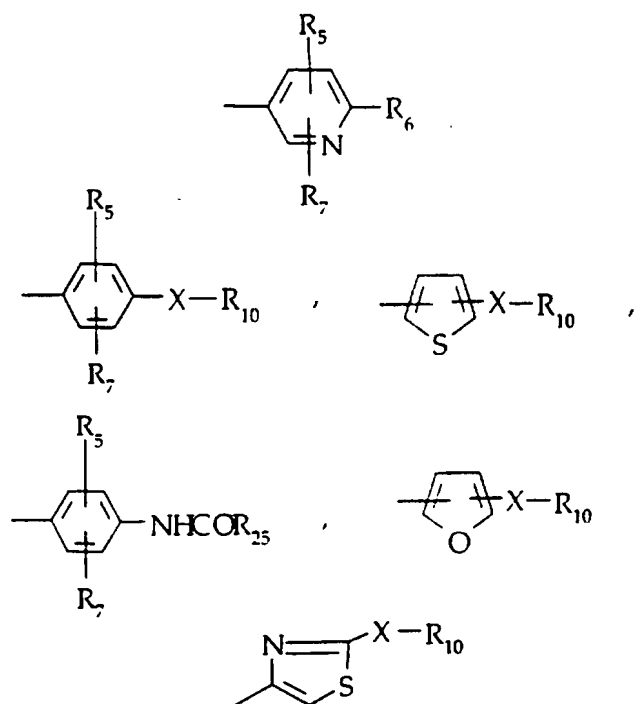


wherein R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine,
 fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-
 15 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower
 alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower
 alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower
 alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
 20 R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are
 methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
 R₃ is the moiety:



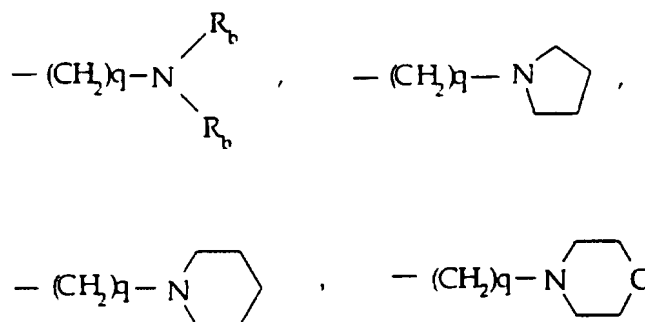
25

wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formulae:



and X is O, S, -NCH₃, or -NH:

R is independently selected from hydrogen, lower
 5 alkyl(C₁-C₃),

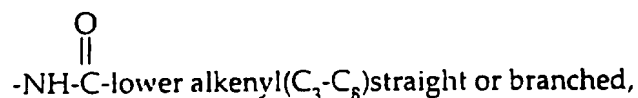
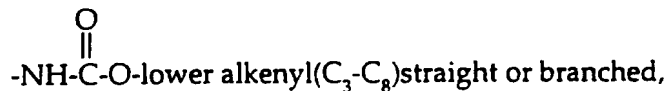
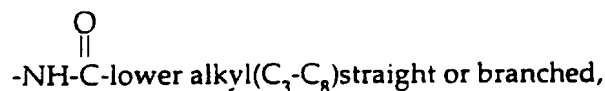
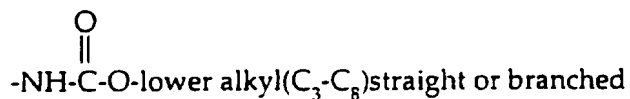
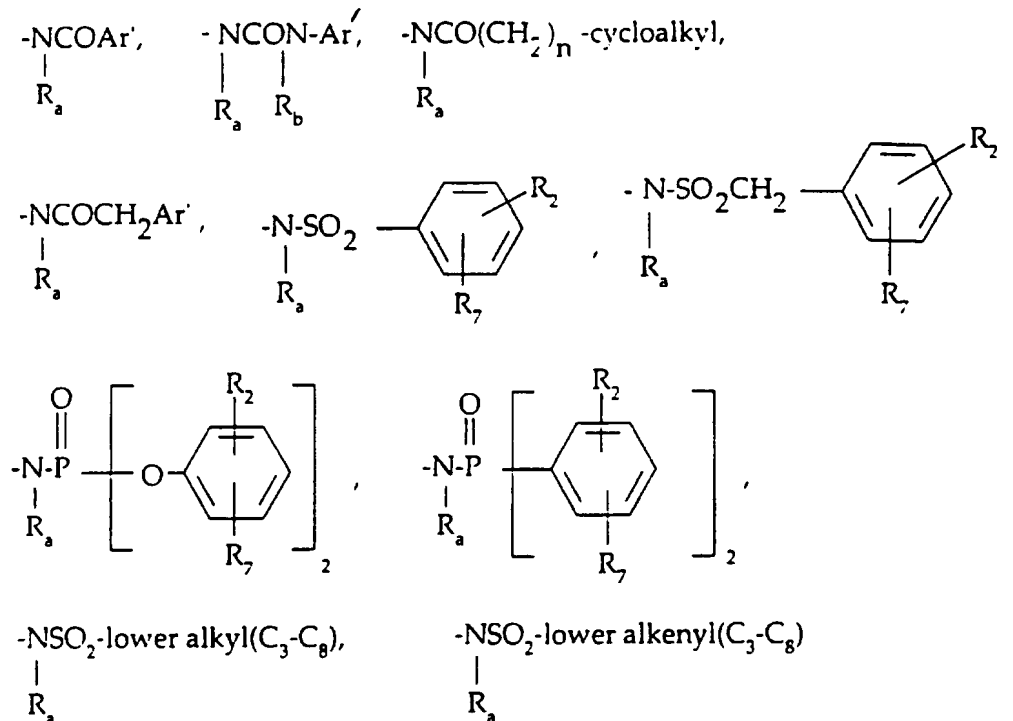


-(CH₂)_q-OH, -(CH₂)_q-O-alkyl(C₁-C₃); q is one, two or
 three;

10 R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-
 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

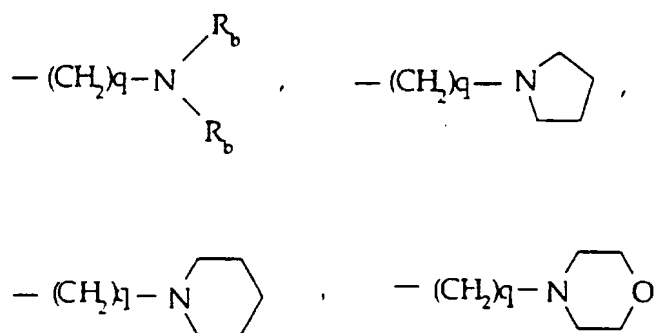
R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower
 alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen;

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:



5

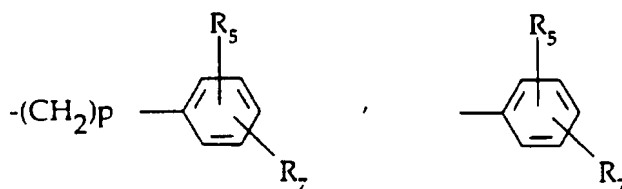
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



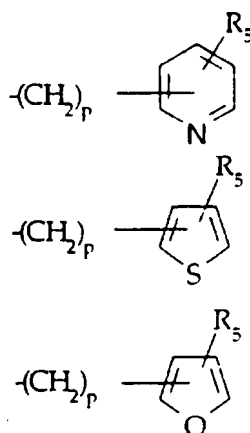
-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),

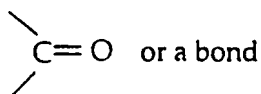


10



and p is zero to three:

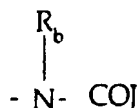
X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



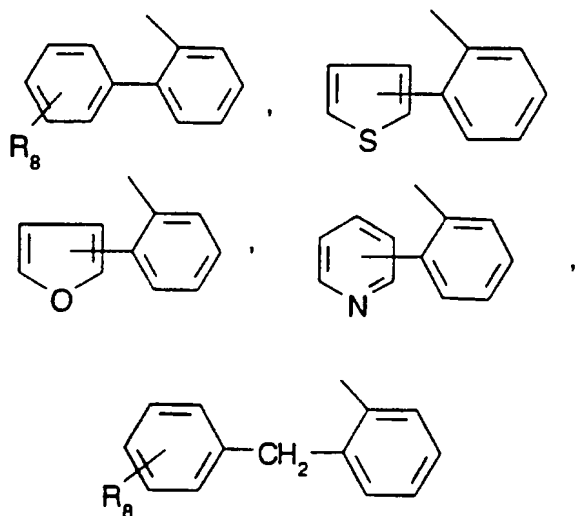
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

(c) a moiety of the formula:

5

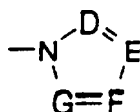


wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched,
 10 -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



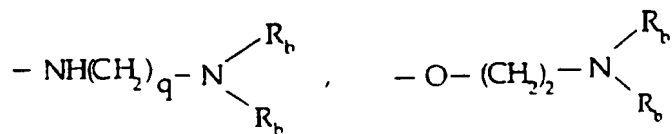
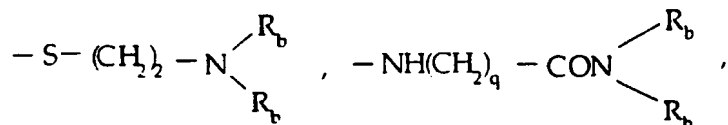
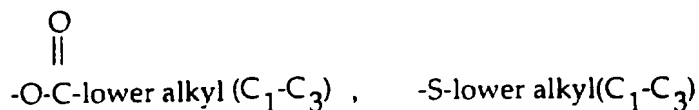
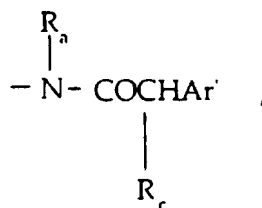
15

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-
 5 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

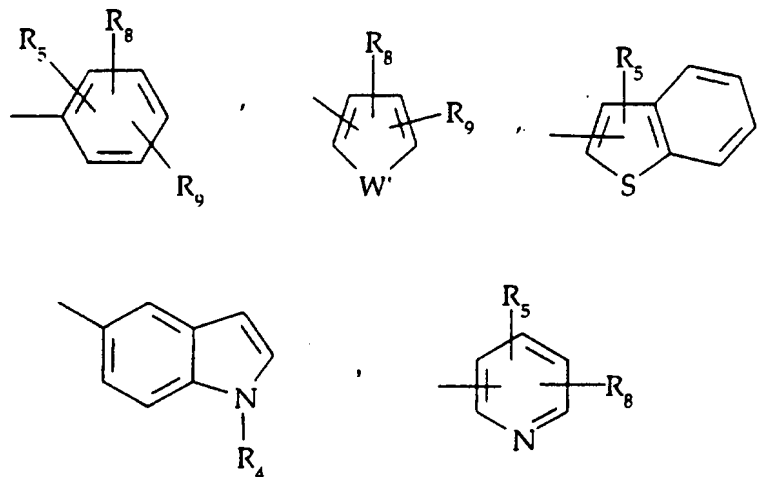


10

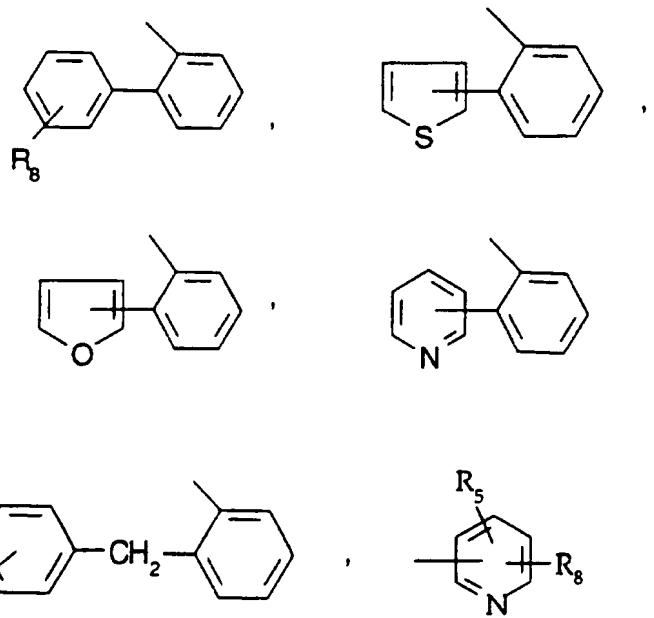
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

15

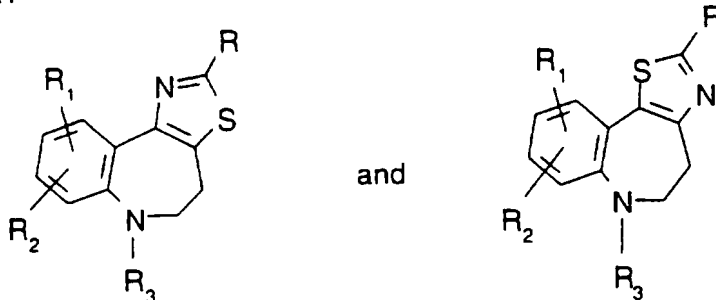


- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
- 5 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q -N(R_b)₂;
- R₂₅ is selected from the moieties.



- 10 W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

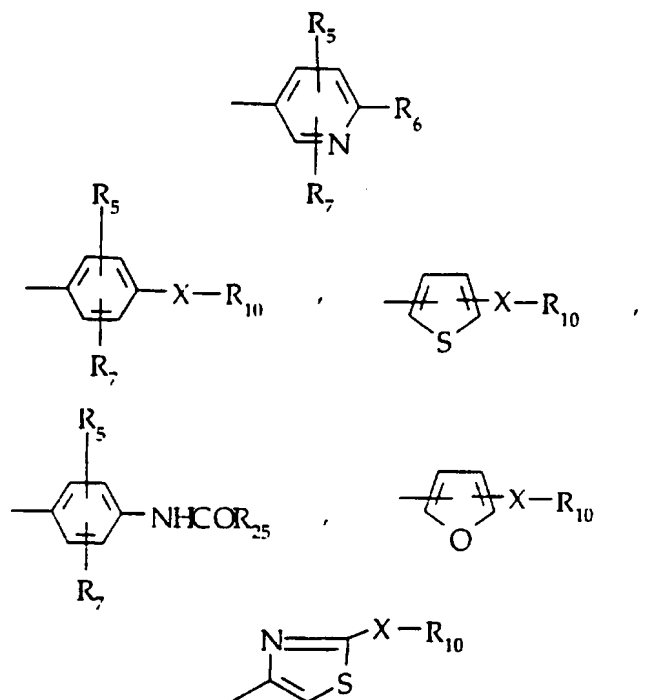
65. A compound selected from those of the formula:



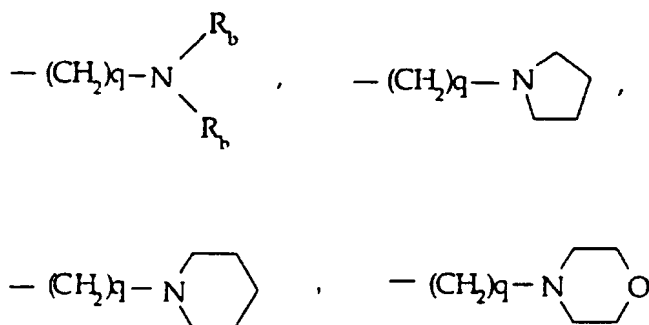
- 5 wherein R_1 is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C1-C3), O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3),
 10 -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C1-C3), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]₂;
 R_2 is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C1-C3), O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), or R_1 and R_2 taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
 15 R_3 is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R is independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),



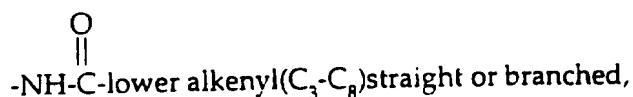
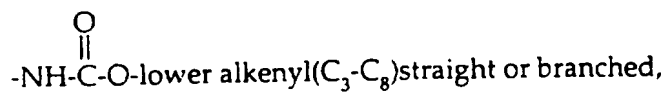
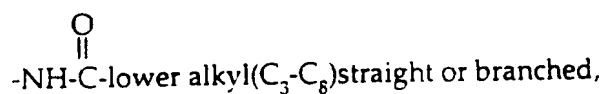
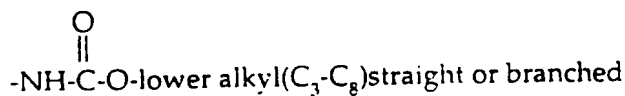
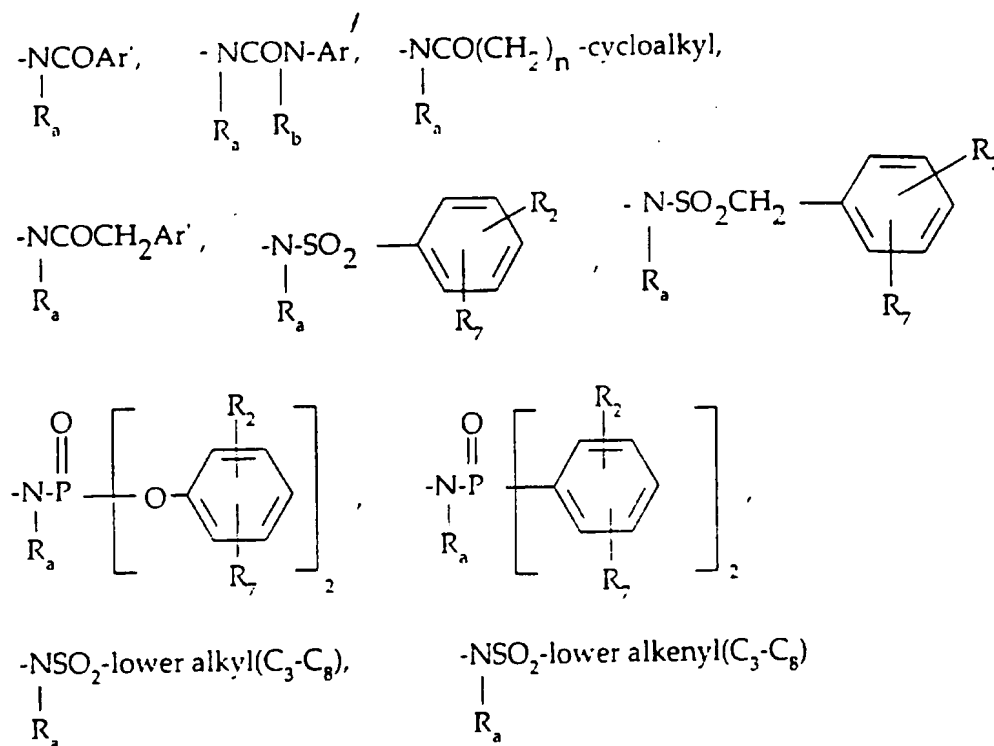
5

-(CH₂)_q-OH, -(CH₂)_q-O-alkyl(C₁-C₃); q is one or two;

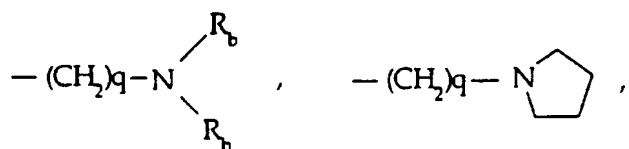
R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

10 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



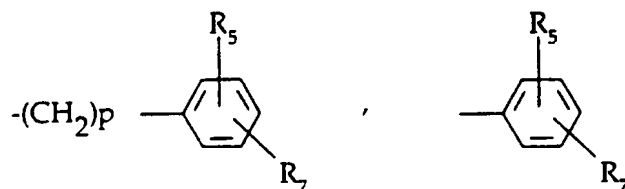
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl,
 5 cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃,
 C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



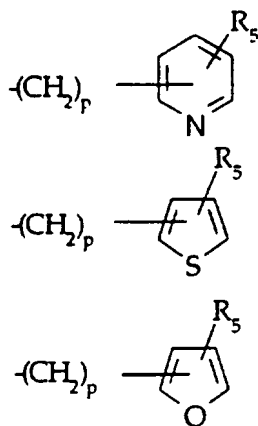
$-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl ($\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$) or $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

$-\text{X}-\text{R}_{10}$; wherein R_{10} is lower alkyl ($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$), lower alkenyl ($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$), $-(\text{CH}_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl ($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_6$),

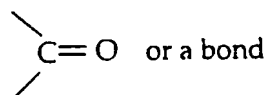


10



and p is zero to three:

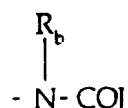
X is O , S , NH , NCH_3 ,



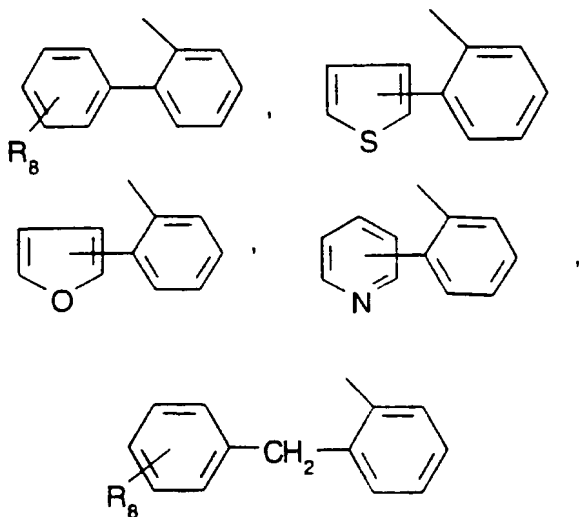
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:

5

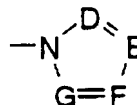


wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched,
 10 -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



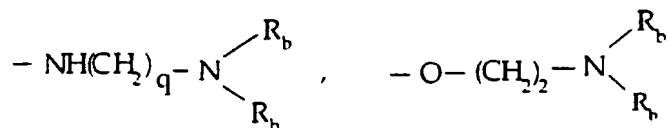
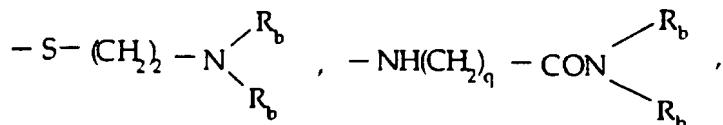
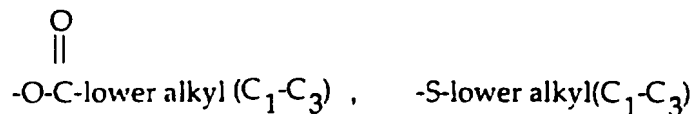
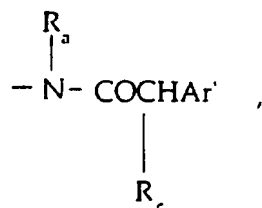
15

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-
 5 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

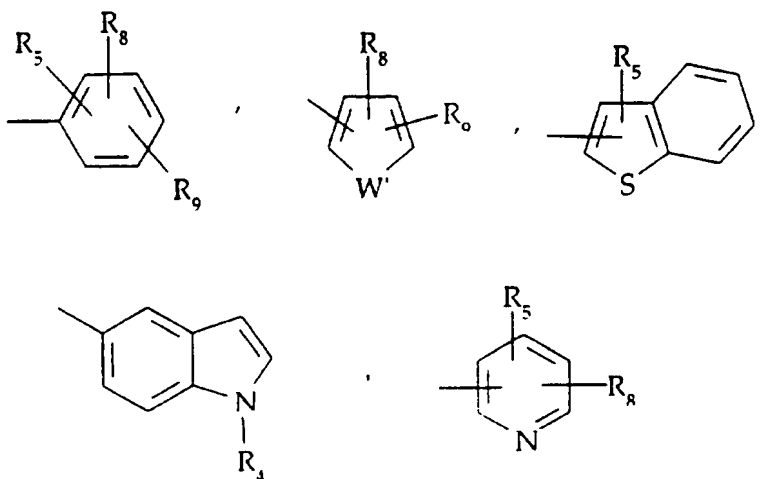
(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



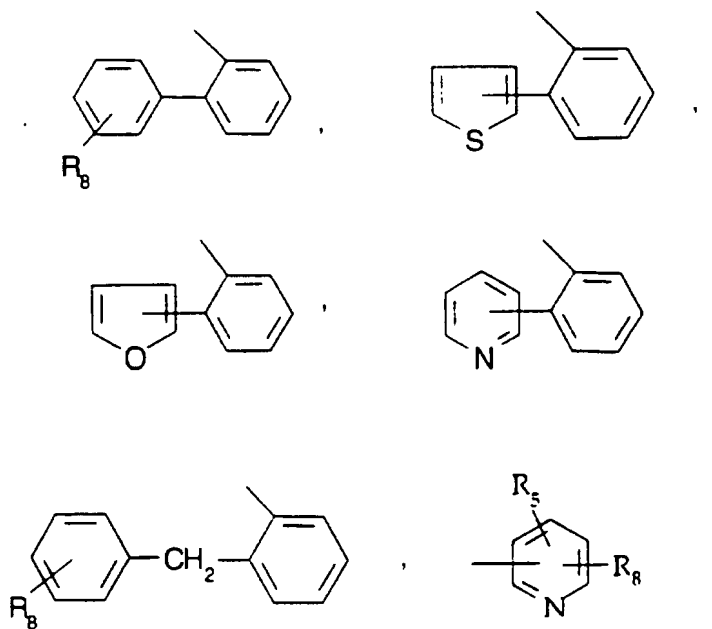
10

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from the group:



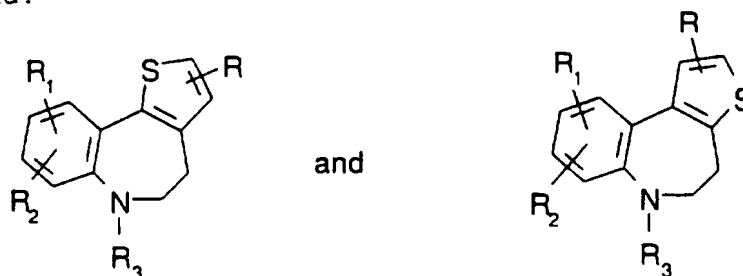
- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃,
 5 -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



10

W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

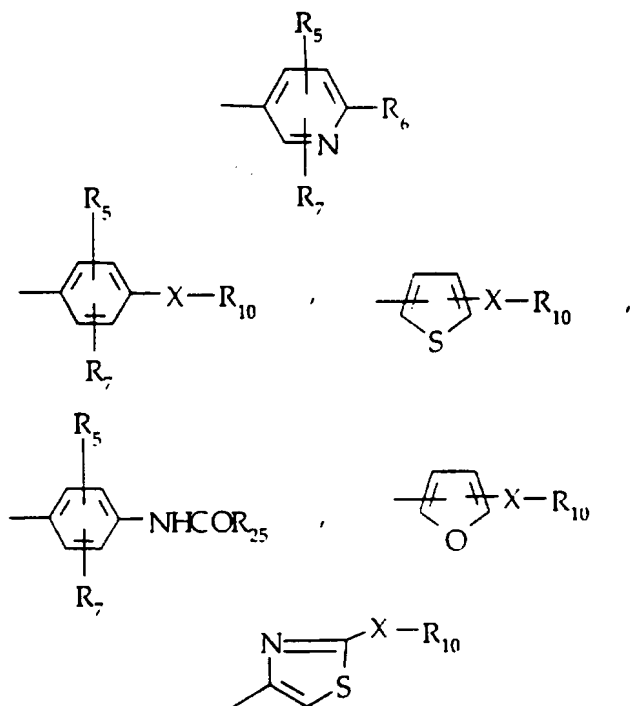
66. A compound selected from those of the
5 formula:



wherein R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower
10 alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
15 O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
R₃ is the moiety:

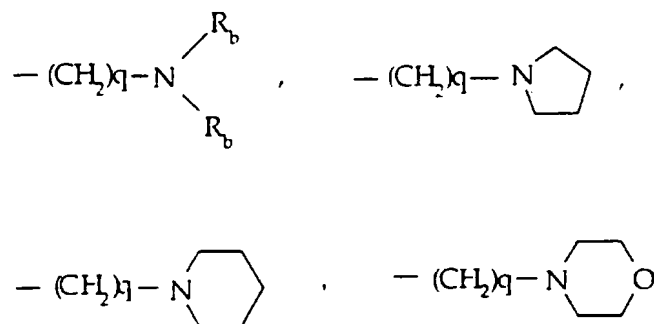


20 wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),

5

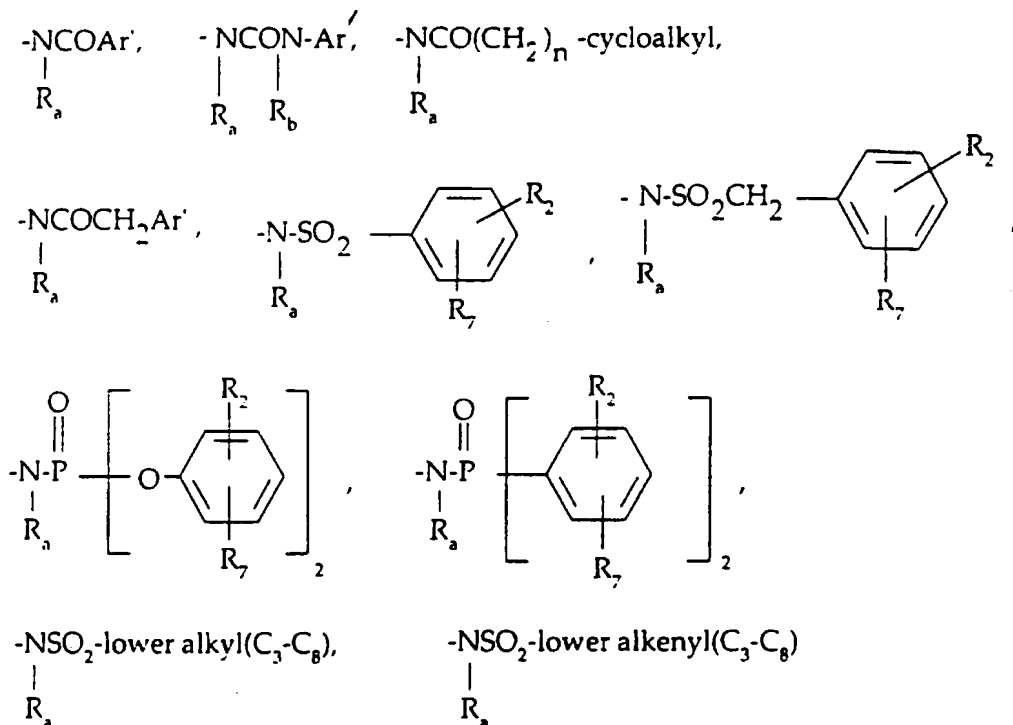


10 $-(CH_2)_q-OH$, $-(CH_2)_q-O$ -alkyl (C₁-C₃); q is one or two; R_4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), $-CO$ -lower alkyl (C₁-C₃);

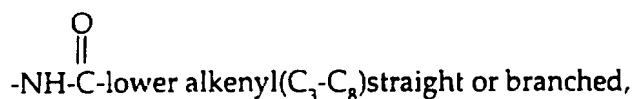
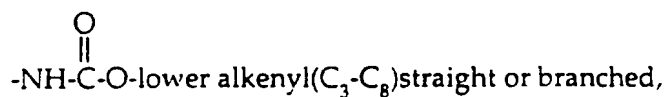
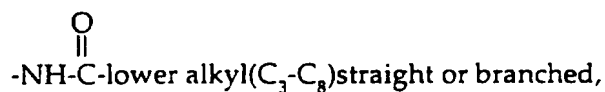
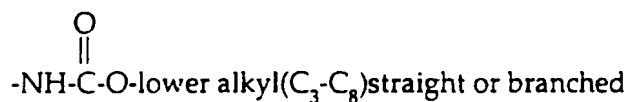
R_5 is hydrogen, $-CH_3$, $-C_2H_5$, Cl, Br, F, $-O-CH_3$, or $-O-C_2H_5$;

R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen:

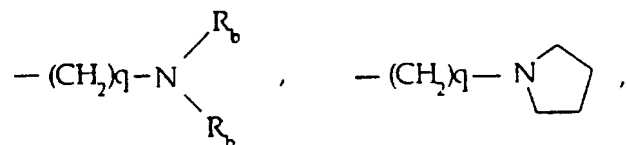
R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



5



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:

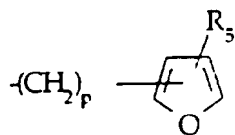
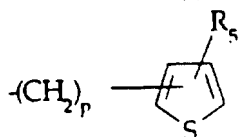
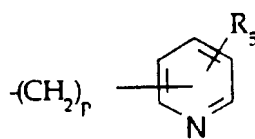
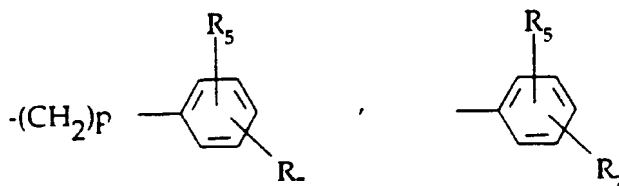


5

-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

and (b) a moiety of the formula:

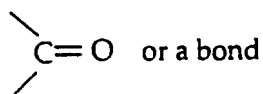
-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl (C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl
10 (C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl (C₃-C₆),



15

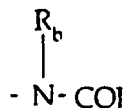
and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

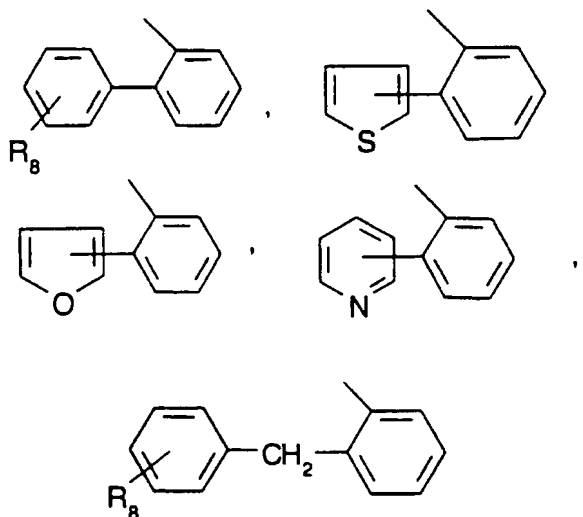
(c) a moiety of the formula:



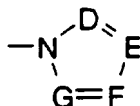
5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

10



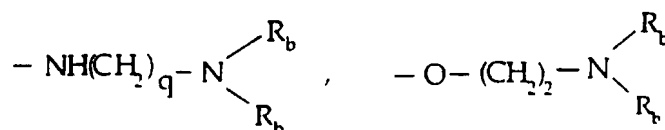
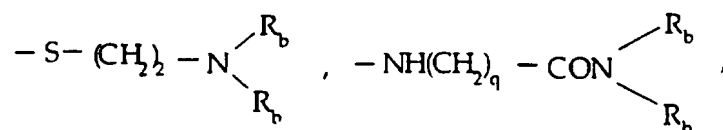
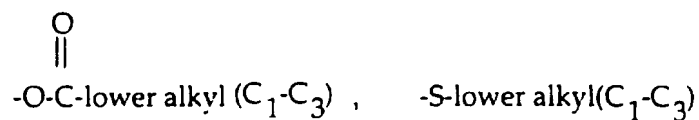
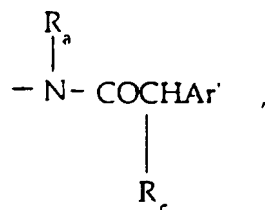
15 or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally

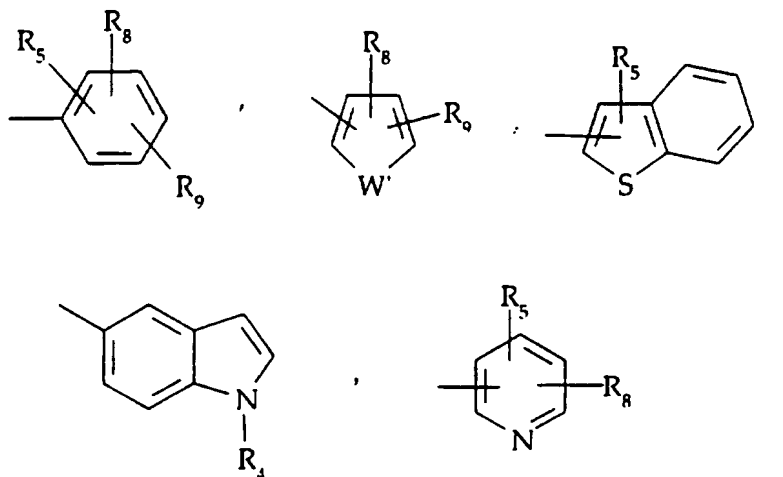
substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

- 5 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

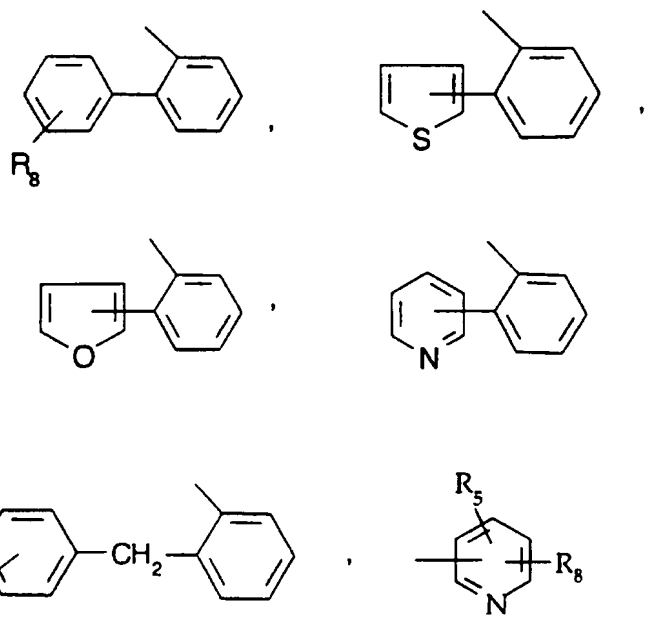


- 10 wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar_i is selected from the group:

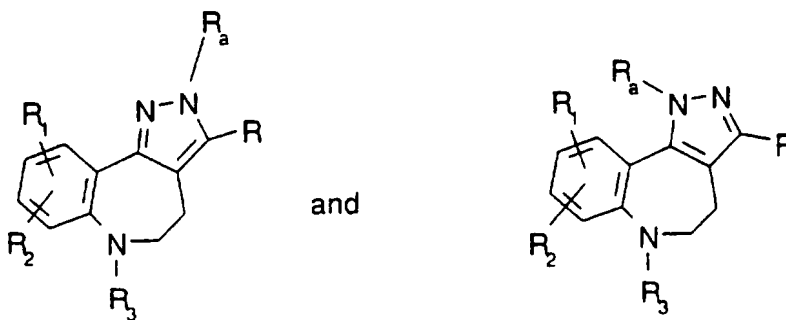


- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
- 5 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
- R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

67. A compound selected from those of the
5 formula:

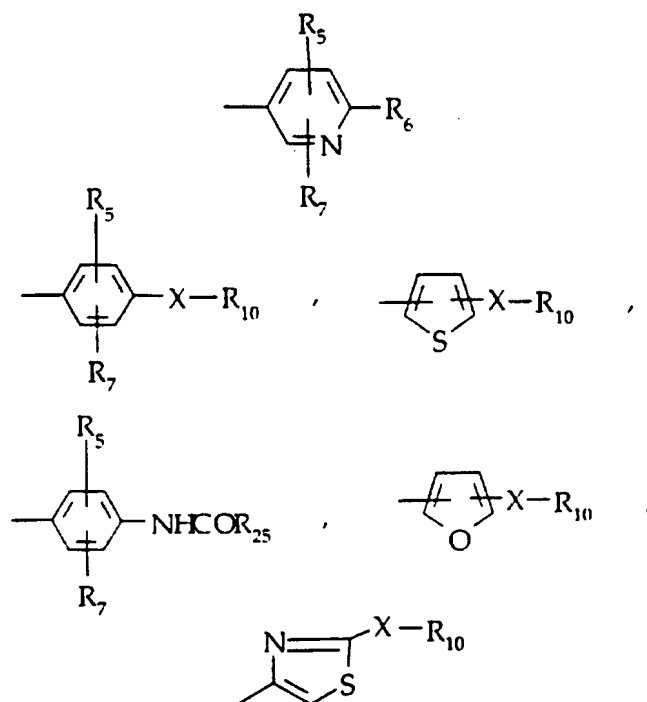


wherein R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
10 R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
15 R₃ is the moiety:



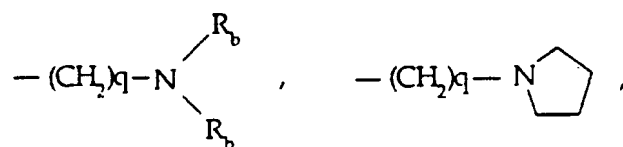
20

wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃).

5

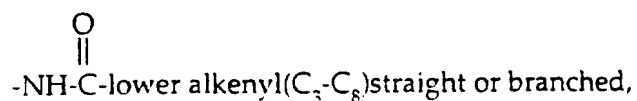
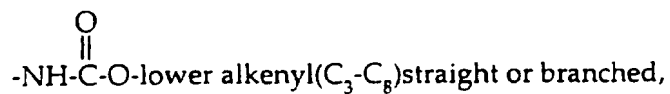
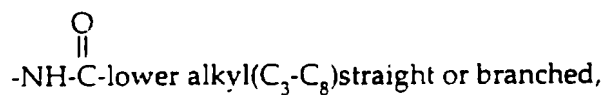
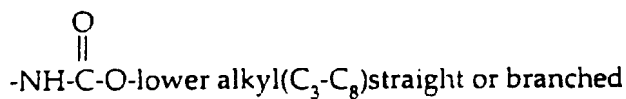
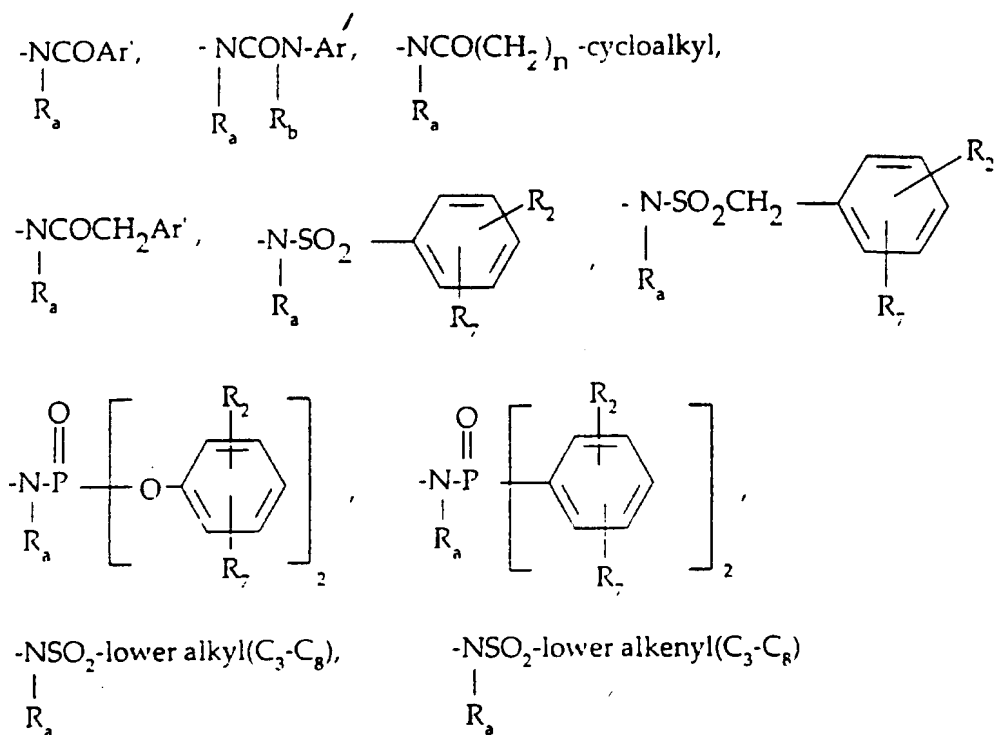


-(CH₂)_q-OH, -(CH₂)_q-O-alkyl(C₁-C₃); q is one, two or three;

R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

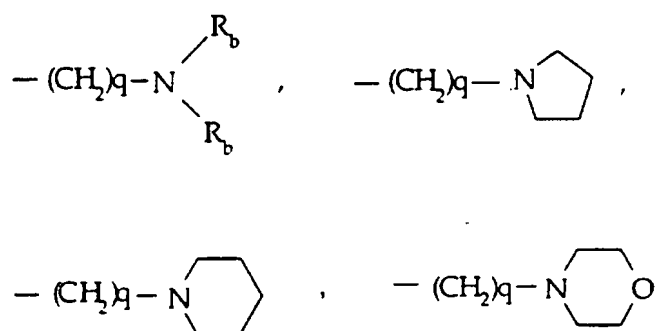
10 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy and halogen.

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



5

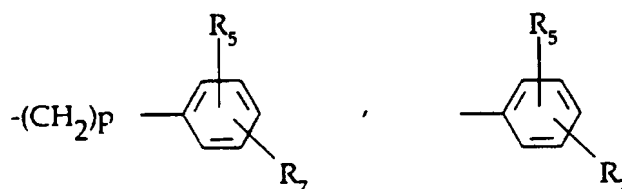
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



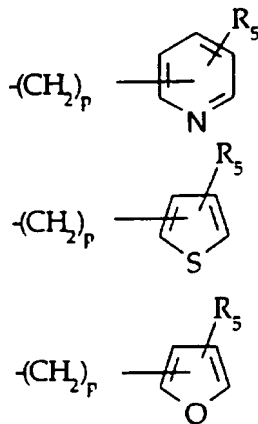
-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one or two; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



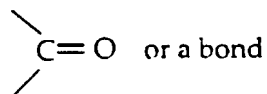
10



and p is zero to three:

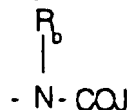
X is C, S, NH, NCH₃;

15



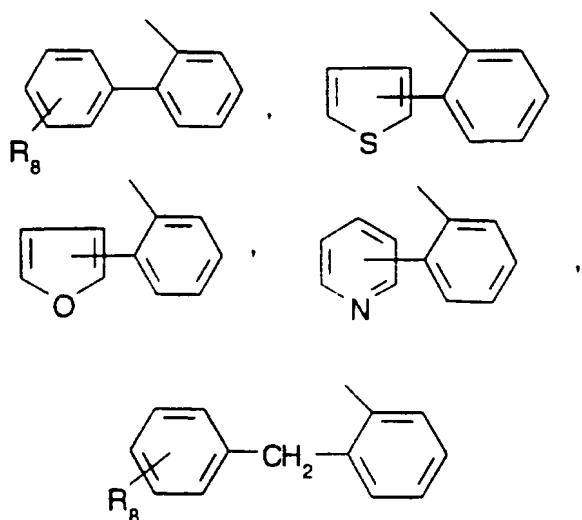
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:



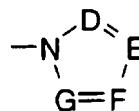
5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



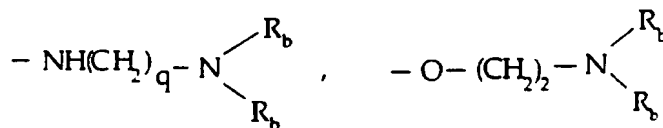
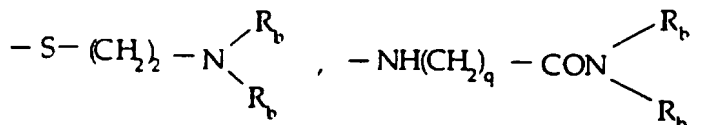
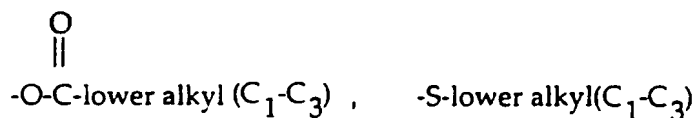
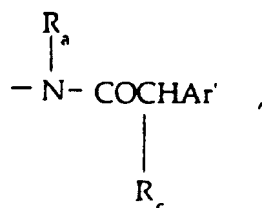
15

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy, -CO₂- lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

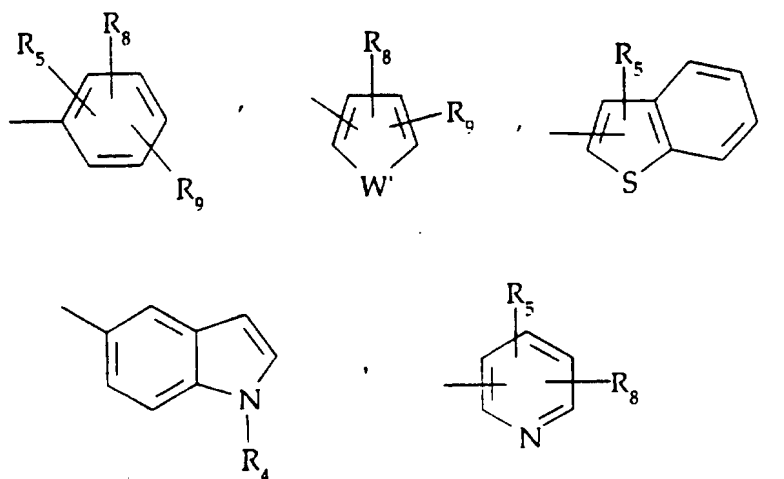


10

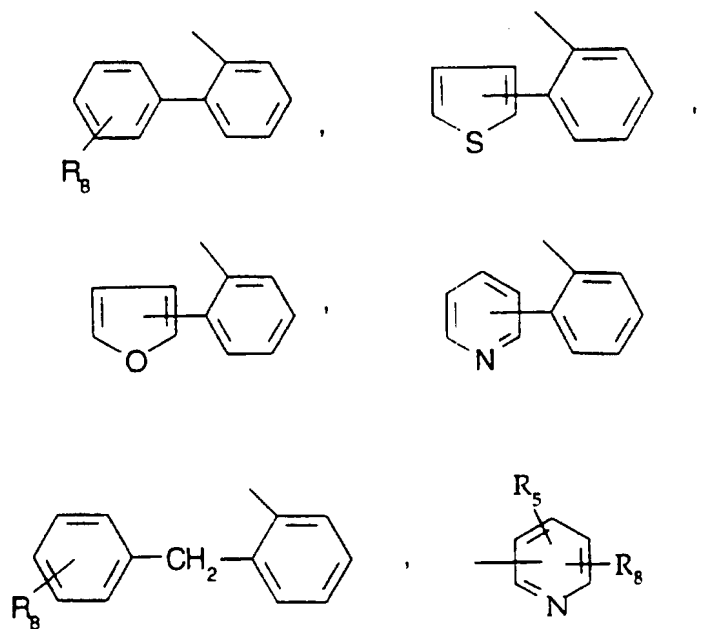
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

Ar' is selected from the group:

15



- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties

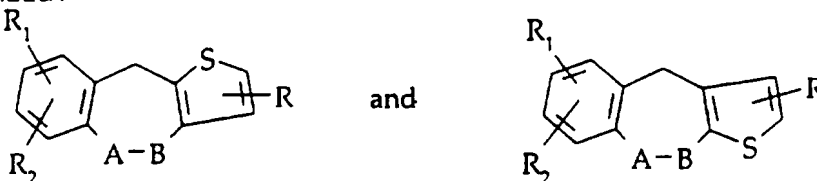


10

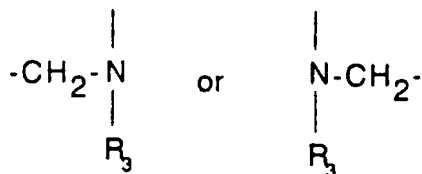
W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

68. A compound selected from those of the

5 formula:



wherein A-B is



10

wherein R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;

15

R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are

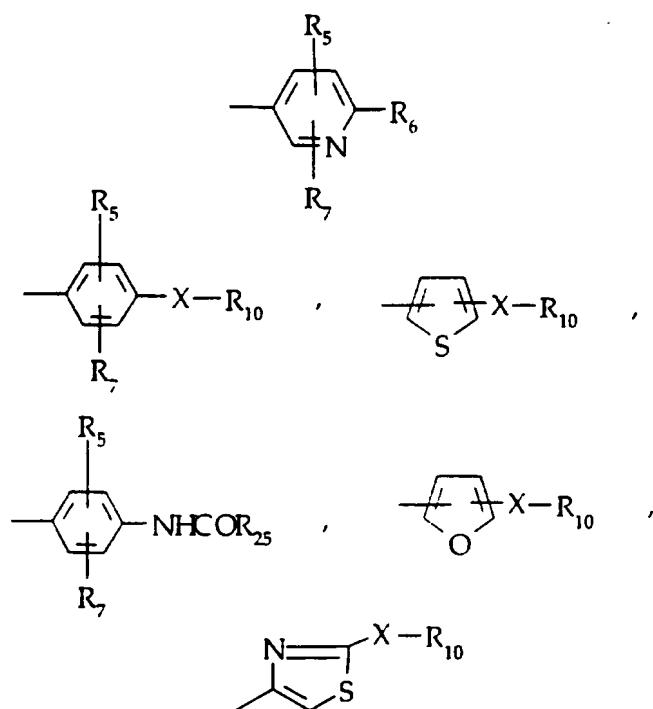
20

methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

R₃ is the moiety:

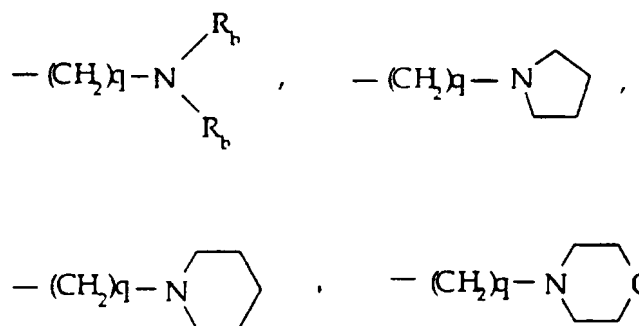


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),

5

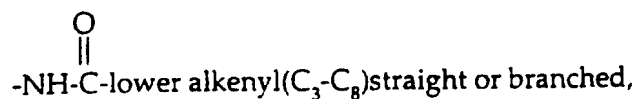
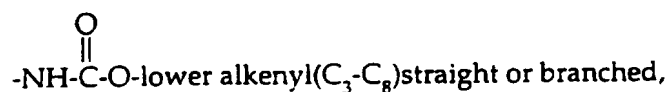
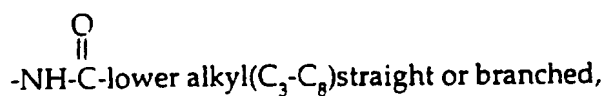
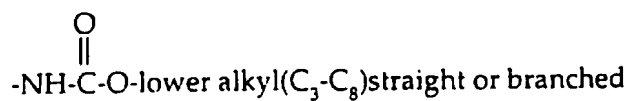
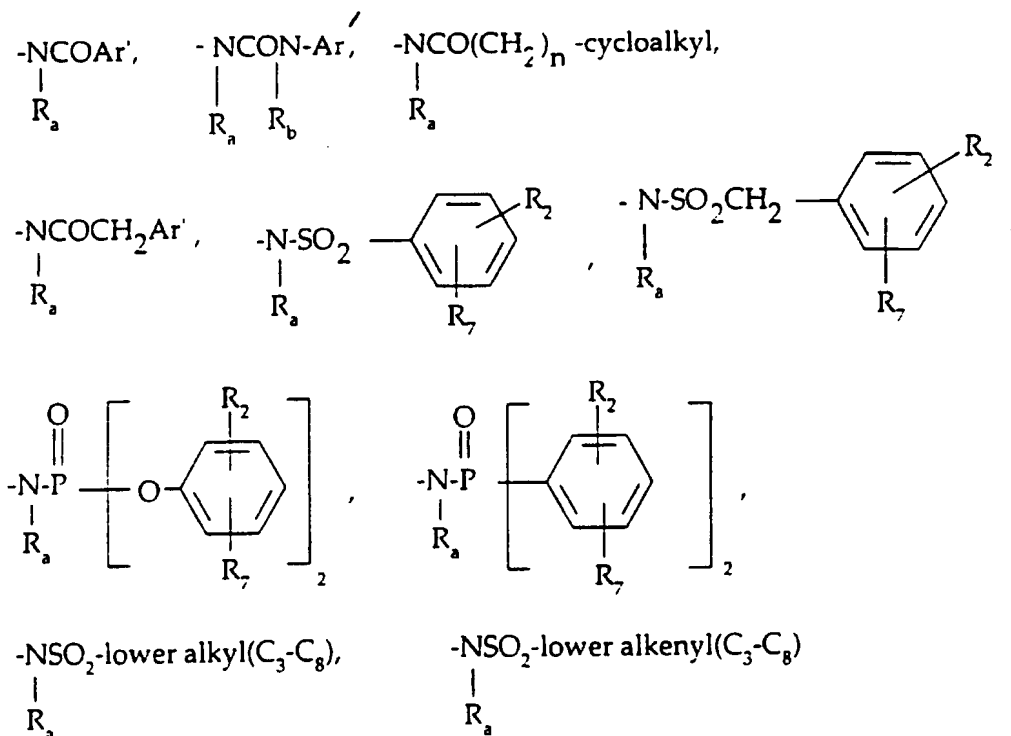


$-(CH_2)_q-OH$, $-(CH_2)_q-O-alkyl(C_1-C_3)$; q is one, two or three;

10 R_4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-CO-$ lower alkyl (C_1-C_3),

R_5 and R_7 are selected from hydrogen (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen;

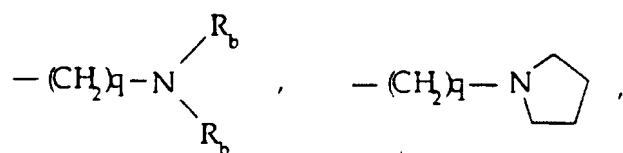
R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



5

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:

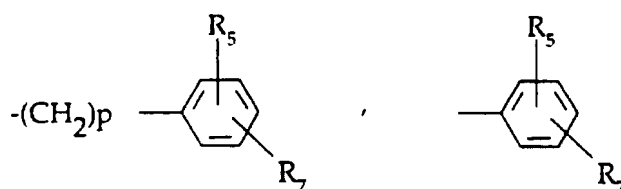
10



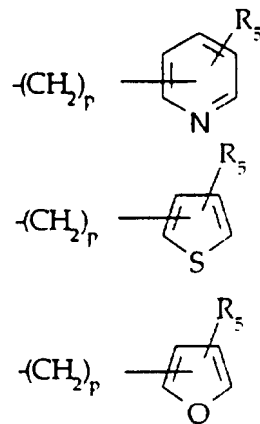
$-(CH_2)_2-O$ -lower alkyl(C1-C3) or $-CH_2CH_2OH$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

$-X-R_{10}$; wherein R_{10} is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6),

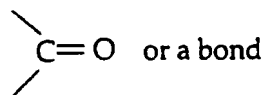


10



and p is zero to three:

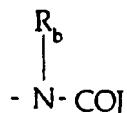
X is O, S, NH, NCH_3 ,



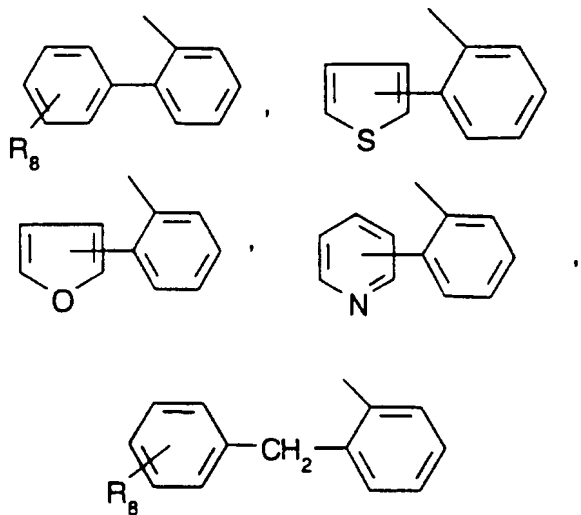
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:

5

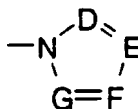


wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or
unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched,
10 -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower
alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,
tetrahydrothiophene,
the moieties



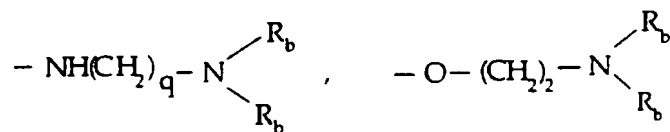
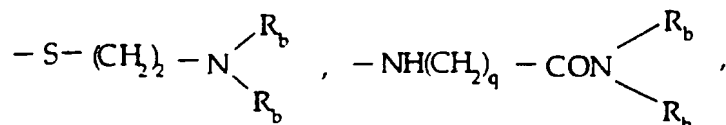
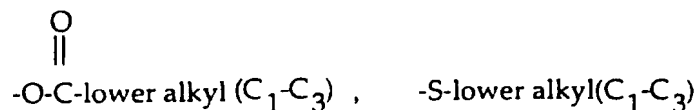
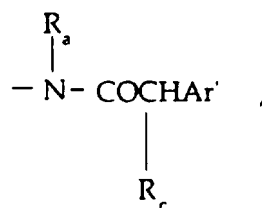
15

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran,
tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-
 5 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

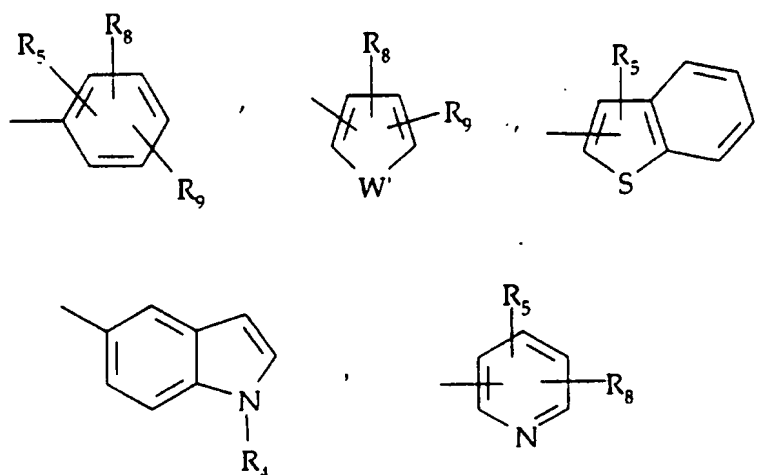


10

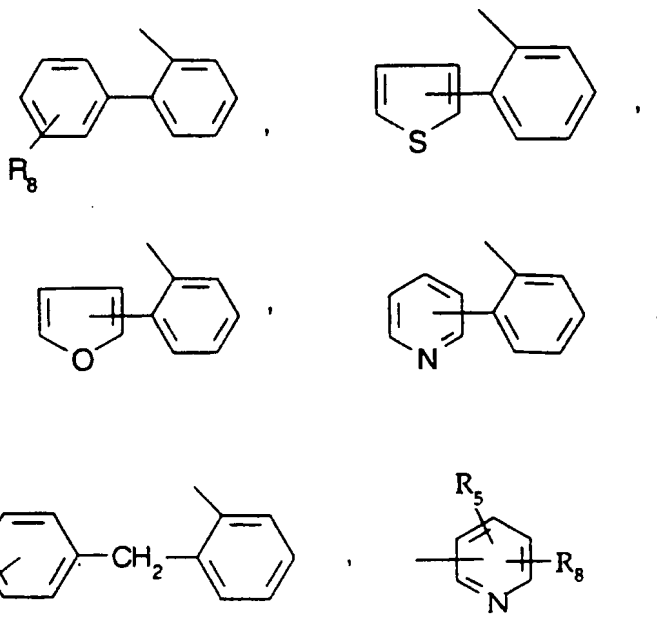
wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

Ar' is selected from the group:

15

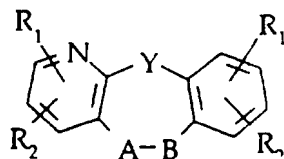


- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 5 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties

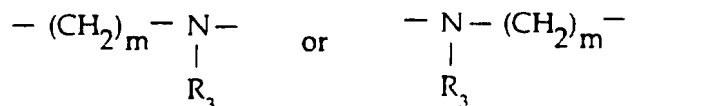


- 10 W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

69. A compound selected from those of the formulae:



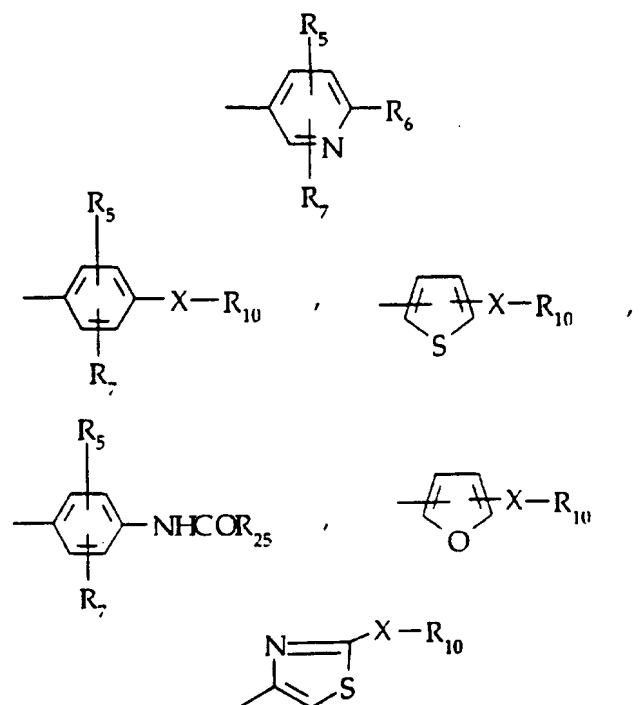
- 5 wherein Y is $-(CH_2)_n-$ and n is an integer zero or one;
A-B is



- 10 wherein m is an integer one when n is one and m is an integer one or two when n is zero;
R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-{lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)₂}, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N{lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)₂};
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
15 O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
20 R₃ is the moiety:



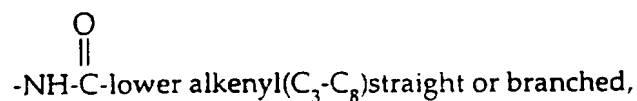
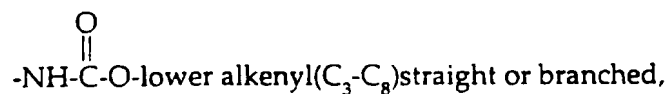
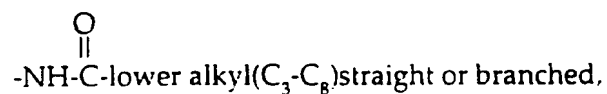
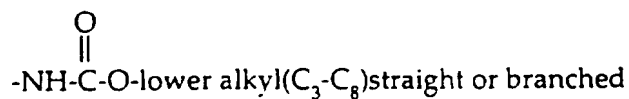
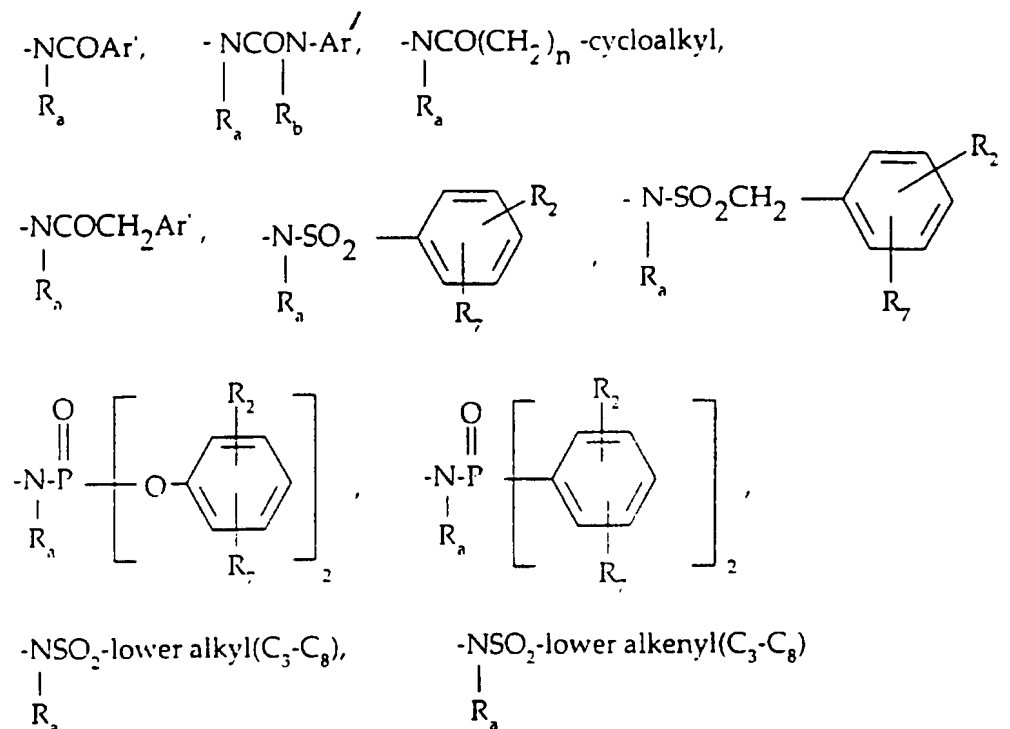
- 25 wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



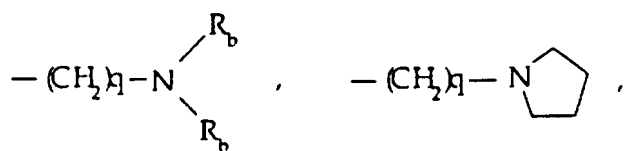
R_4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C_1-C_3), $-CO-$ lower alkyl(C_1-C_3);

R_5 and R_7 are selected from hydrogen(C_1-C_3) lower alkyl(C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen;

R_6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



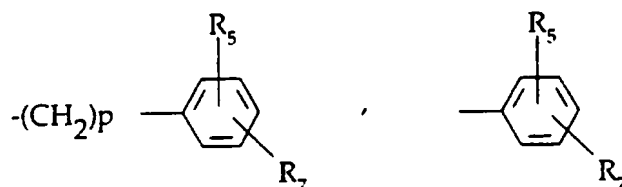
- 5 wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



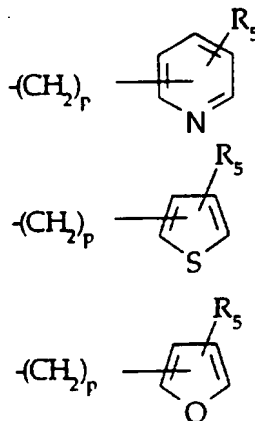
-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



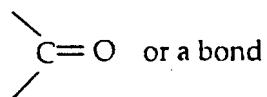
10



and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

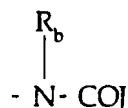
15



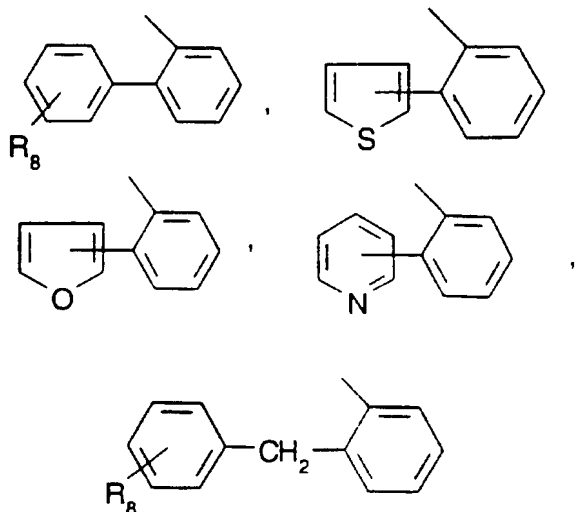
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:

5

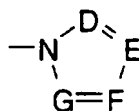


wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or
unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched,
10 -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower
alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,
tetrahydrothiophene,
the moieties



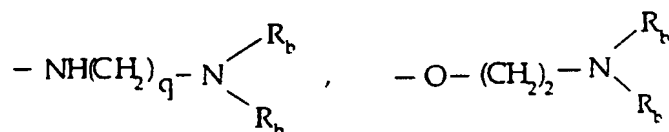
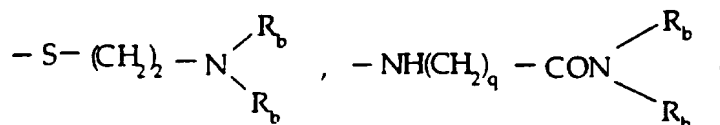
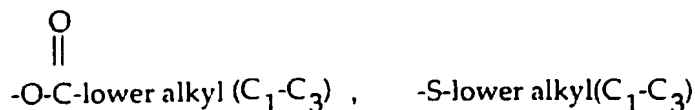
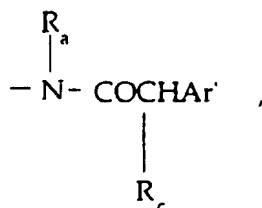
15

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran,
tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-
 5 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

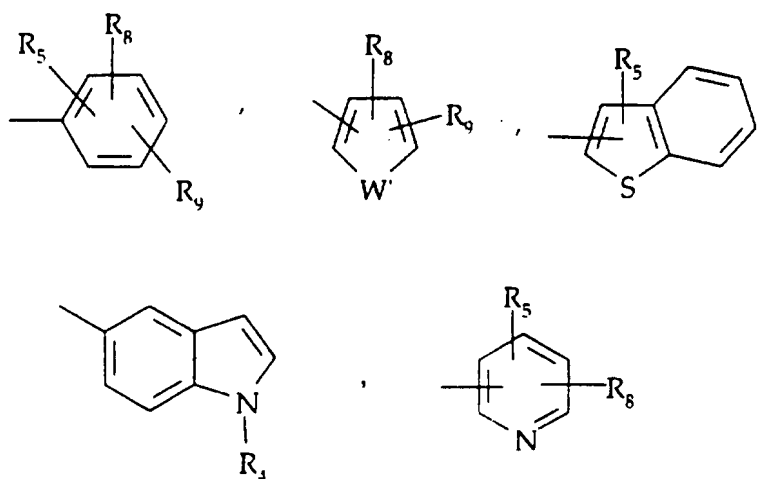
(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



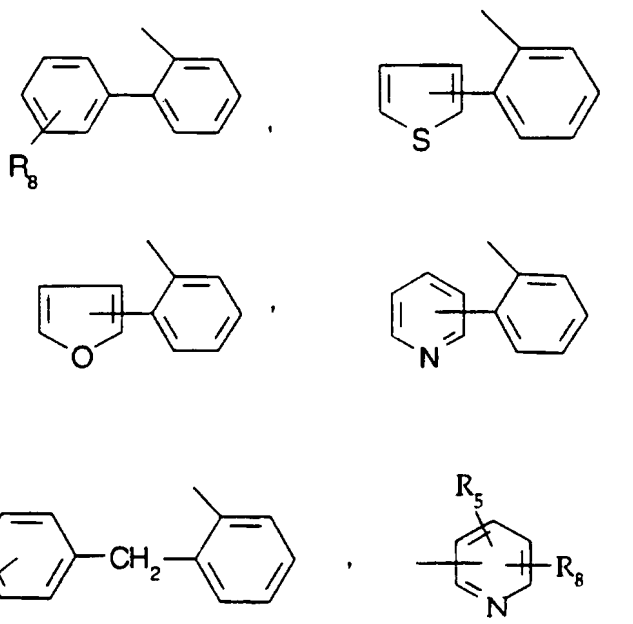
10

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from the group:



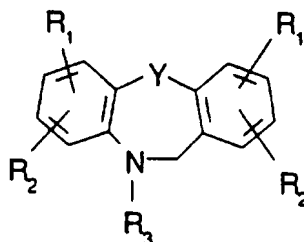
R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃,
 5 -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



10

W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
-NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and
pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

70. A compound selected from those of the
5 formula:



wherein Y is selected from O, S, NH, and N-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃);

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine,
10 iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
-N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-
15 C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;

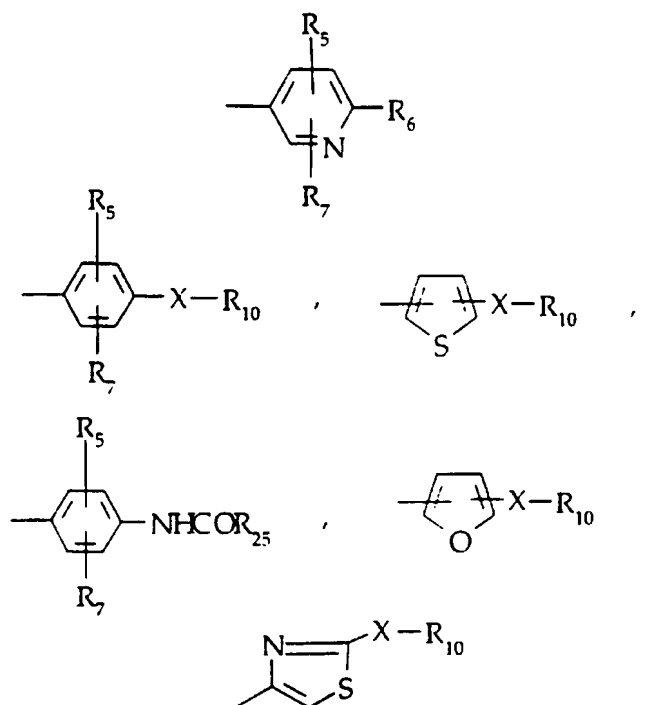
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are
methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

R₃ is the moiety:



20

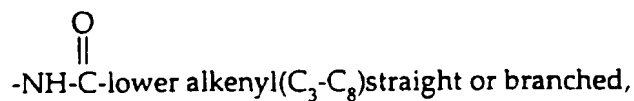
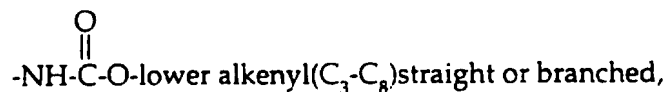
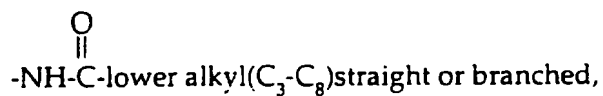
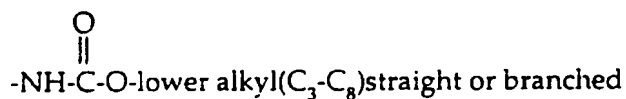
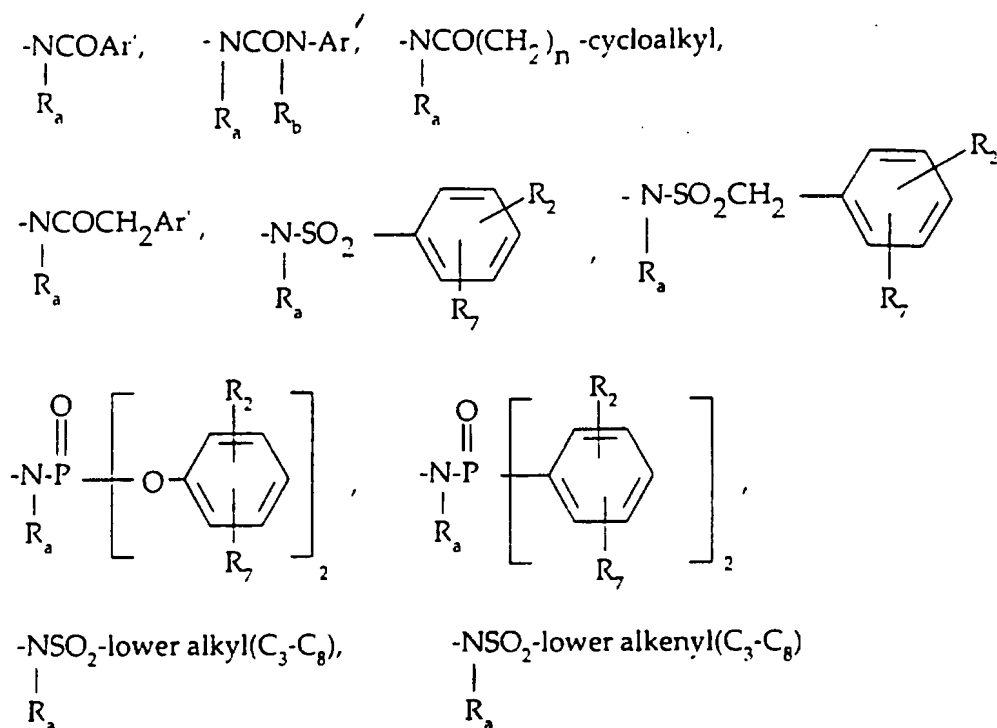
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-3), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

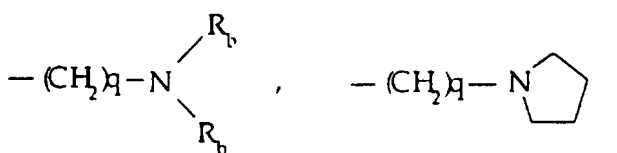
R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen(C₁-C₃) lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



5

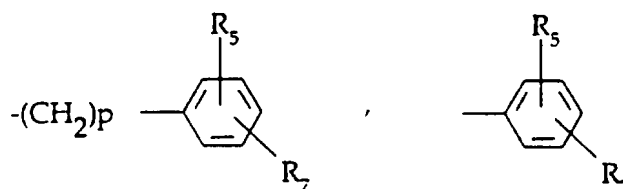
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



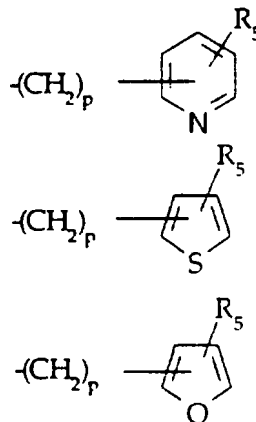
-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

5 and (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl (C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl (C₃-C₆),

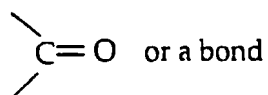


10



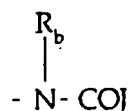
and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

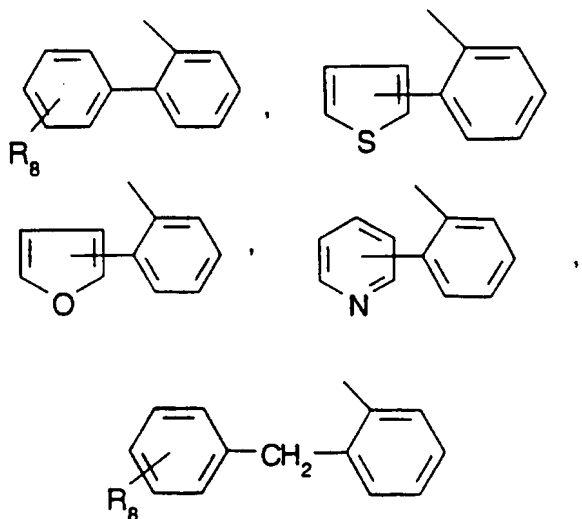


15

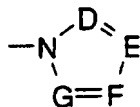
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined
 (c) a moiety of the formula:



5 wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,
 10 tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



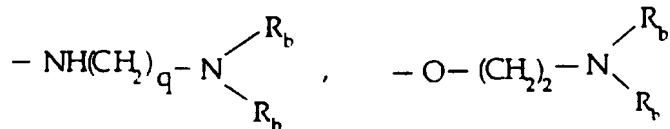
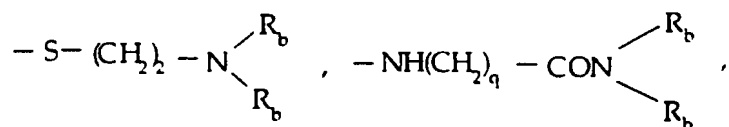
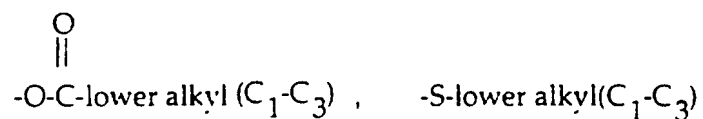
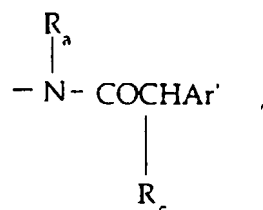
or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran,
 15 tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy,
 20 -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy,

-CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

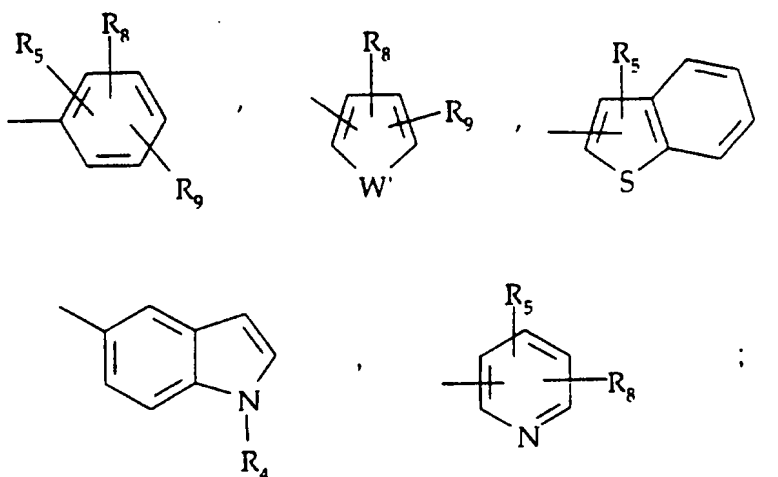
(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



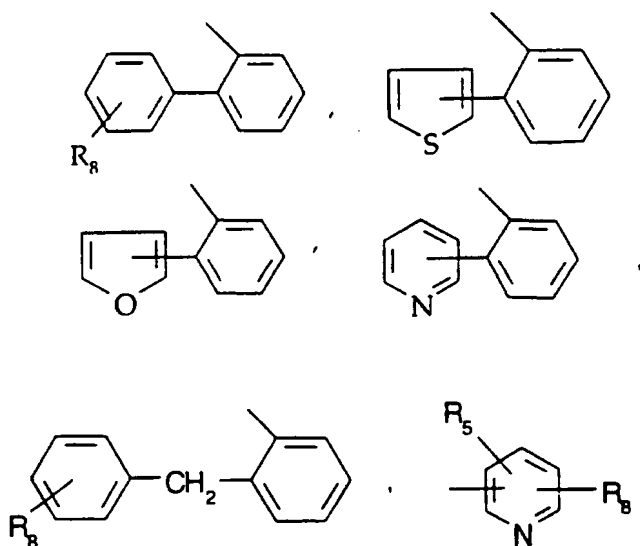
5

wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

10 wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

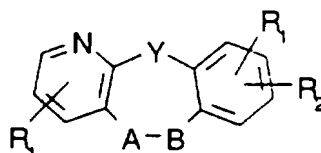


- R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties

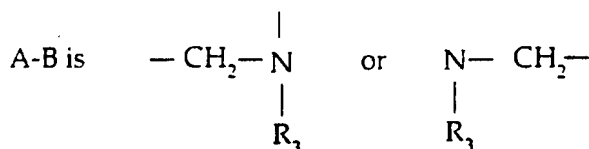


W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
-NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and
pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

71. A compound selected from those of the
5 formula:



wherein Y is O, S, NH and N-lower alkyl; and



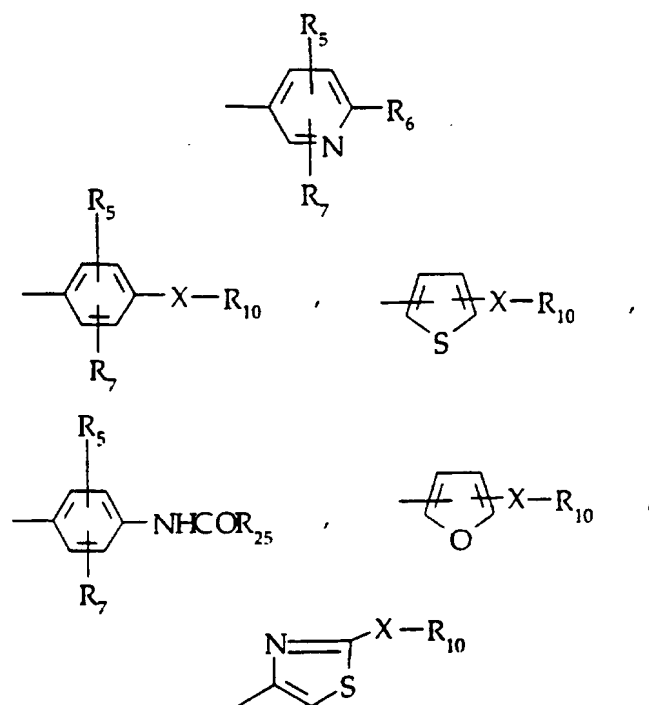
10

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine,
iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower
15 alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
-N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower
alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
20 O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are
methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
R₃ is the moiety:



25

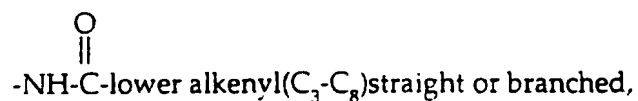
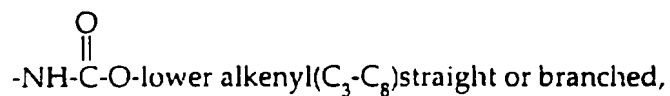
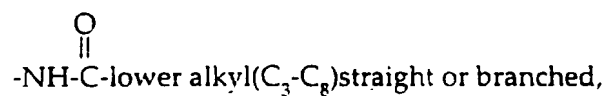
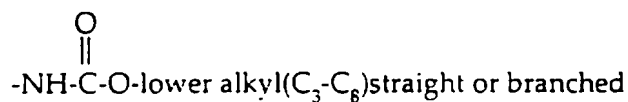
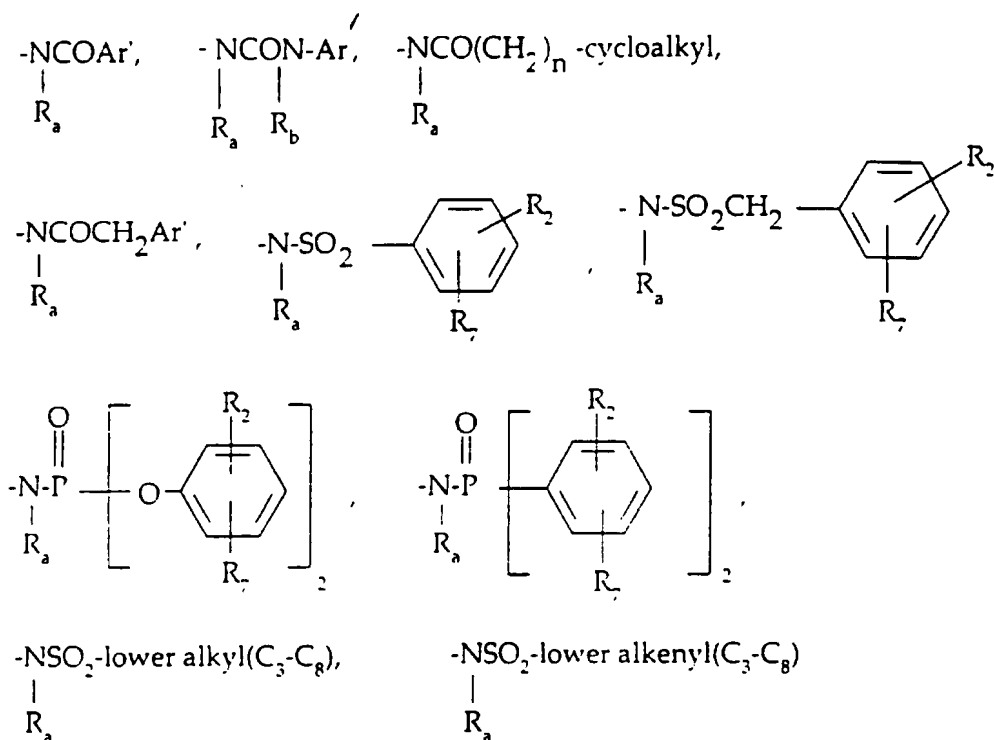
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)

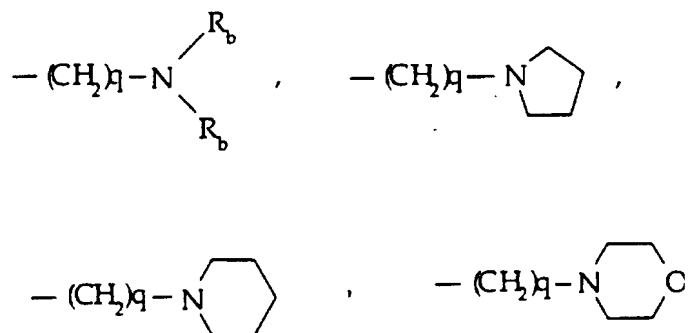
5 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen(C₁-C₃) lower
 alkyl(C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen;

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl,

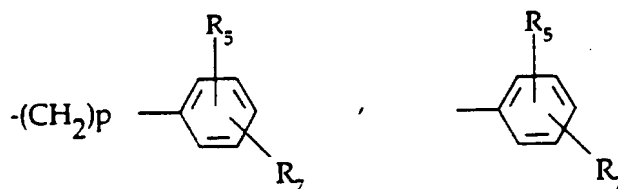
- 5 cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



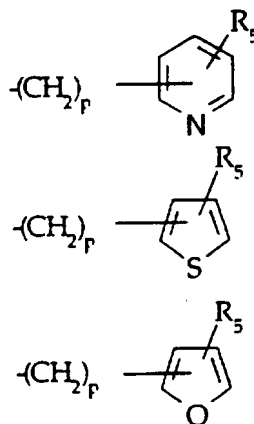
---(CH₂)₂O---lower alkyl(C₁---C₃) or ---CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, CH₃ or ---C₂H₅;

5 (b) a moiety of the formula:

---X---R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃---C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃---C₈), ---(CH₂)_p---cycloalkyl(C₃---C₆),



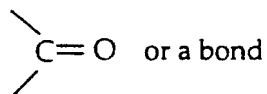
10



and p is zero to three:

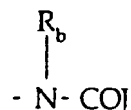
X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

15



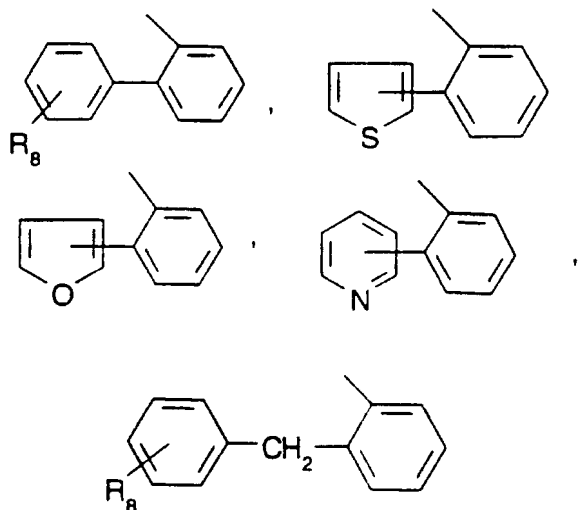
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:

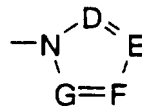


5

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydroguran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



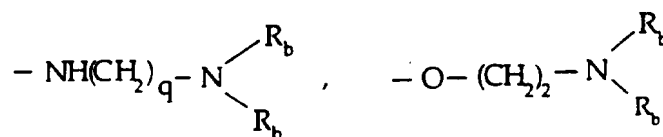
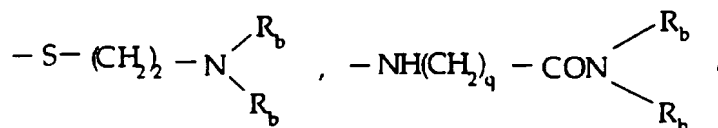
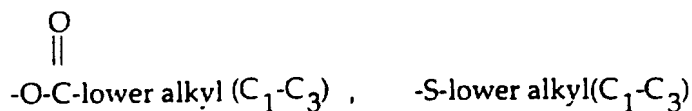
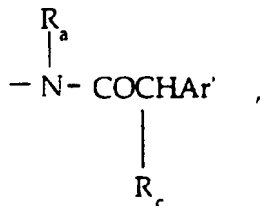
15 or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



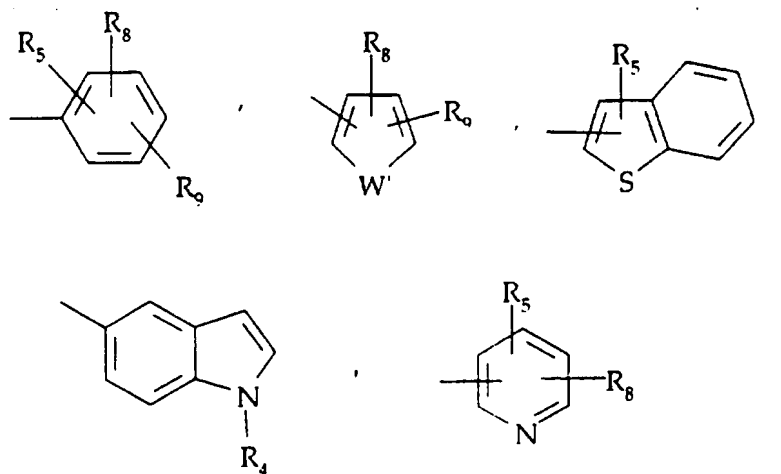
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally

substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy,
 -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy,
 -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as
 hereinbefore defined;

- 5 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

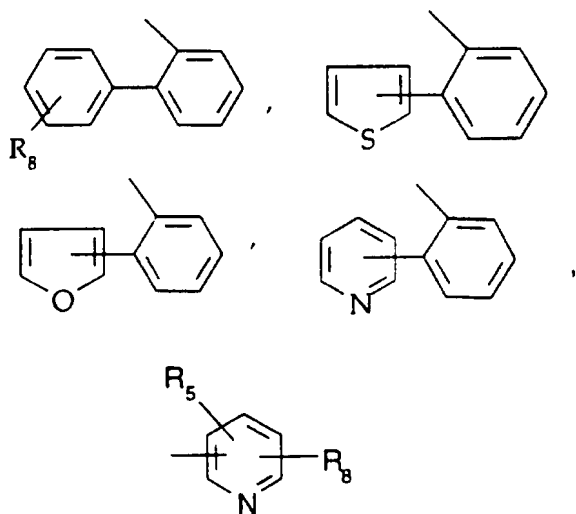


- wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl,
 10 -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore
 defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from the group:



R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 5 -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or
 -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(Rb)(CH₂)_q-N(Rb)₂;

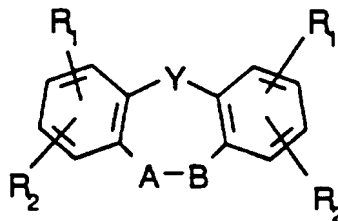
R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



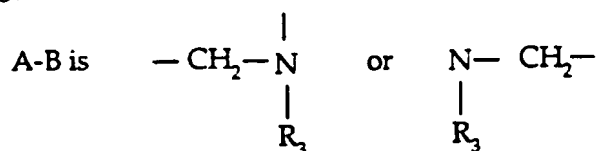
10

W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

72. A compound selected from those of the formula:



wherein Y is selected from O, S, NH, and N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);



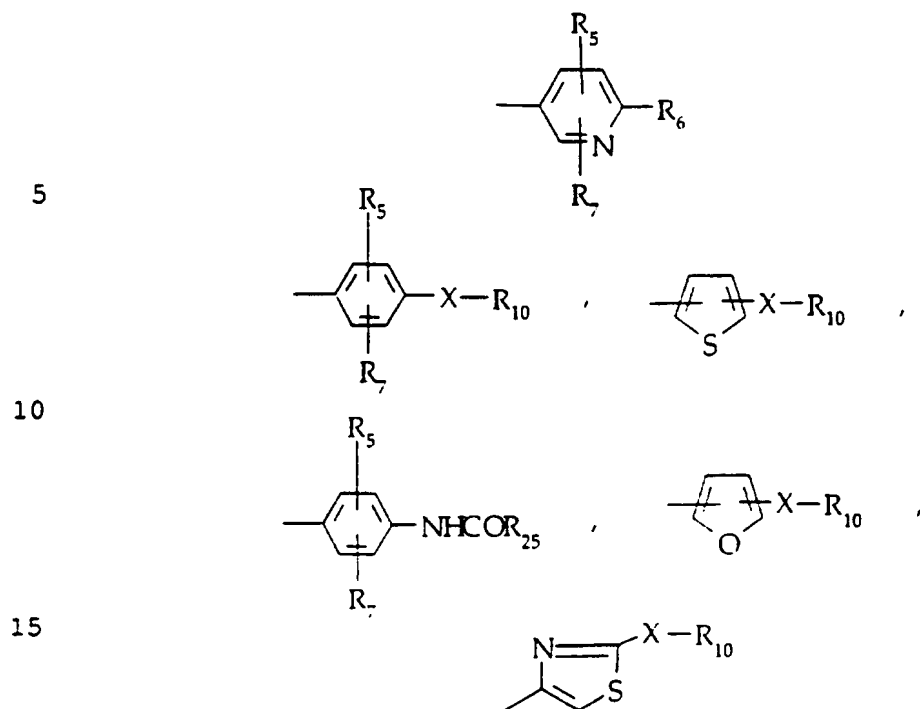
R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;

R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

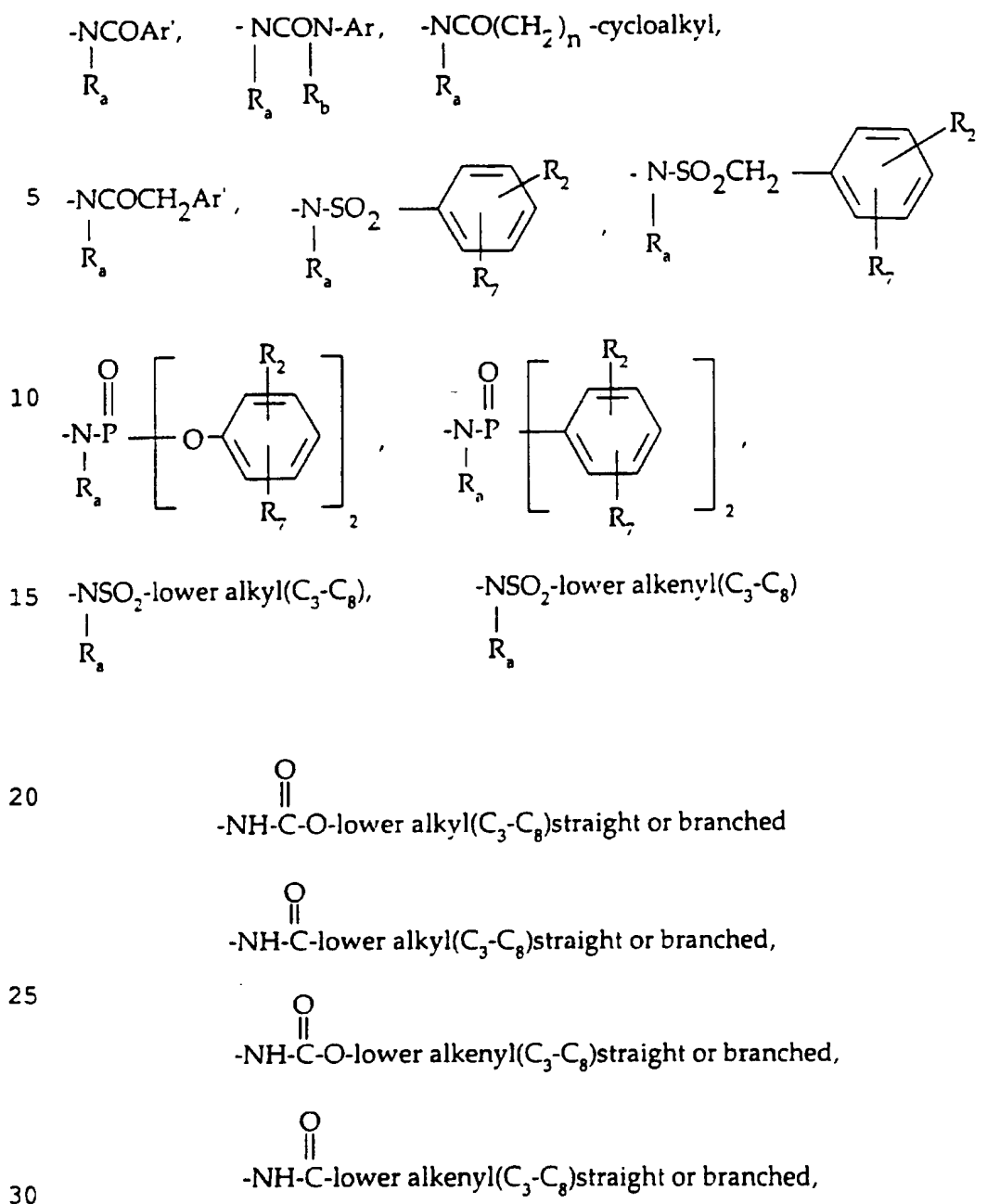
R₃ is the moiety:



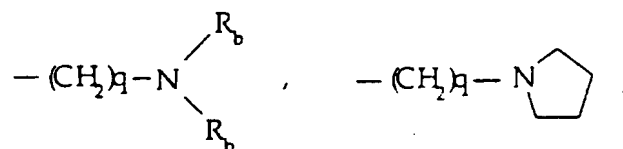
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-3), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);
 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen(C₁-C₃) lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) lower
 alkoxy and halogen
 R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5

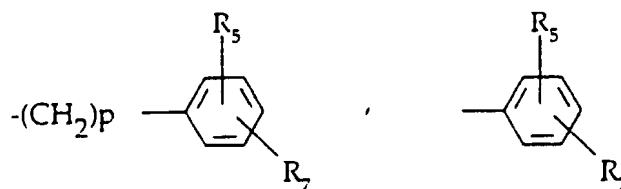


10 $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-O-lower alkyl}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$;

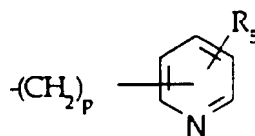
and (b) a moiety of the formula:

-X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),

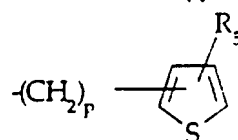
15



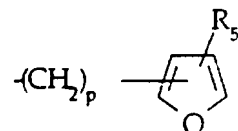
20



25

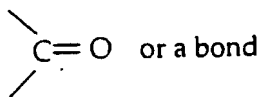


30



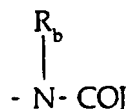
and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



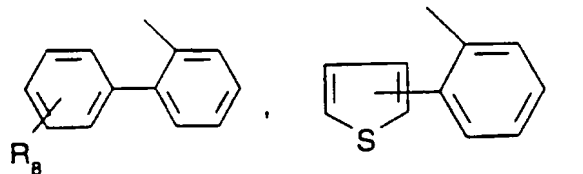
and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

5 (c) a moiety of the formula:

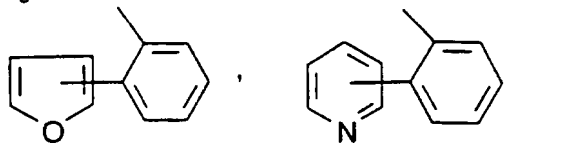


10 wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

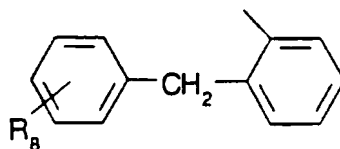
15



20

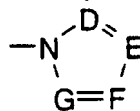


25



or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

30



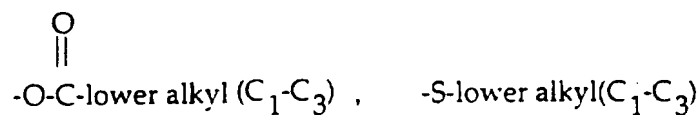
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)

lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

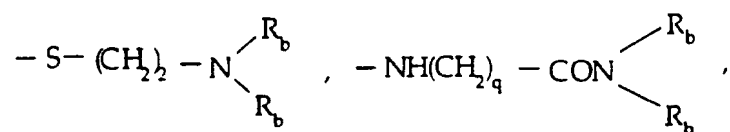
(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



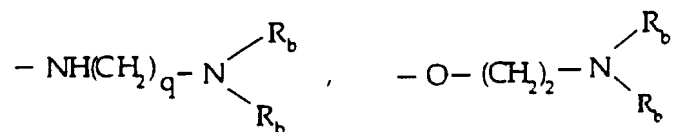
10



15

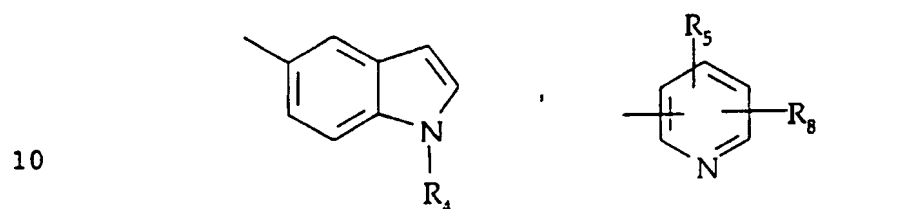
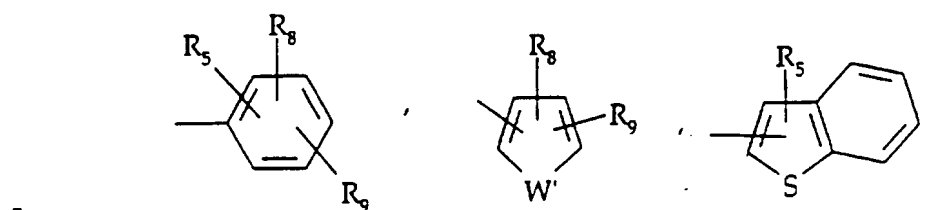


20



wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

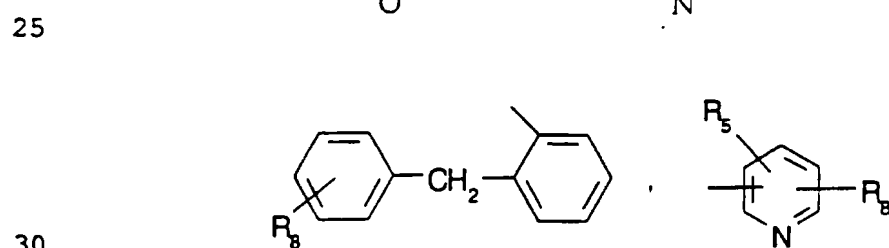
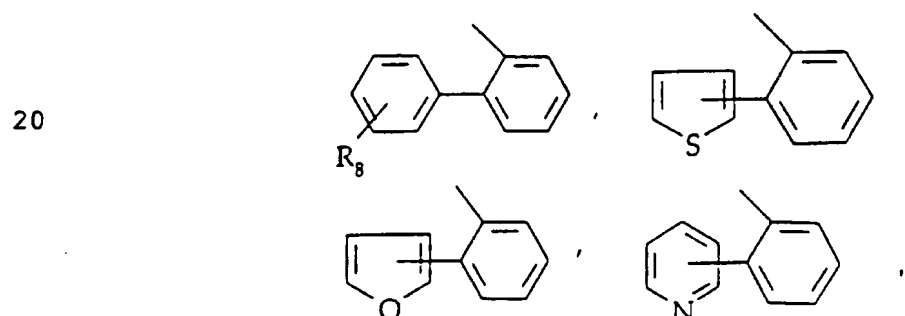
wherein Ar' is selected from the group:



R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);-N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,

15 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;

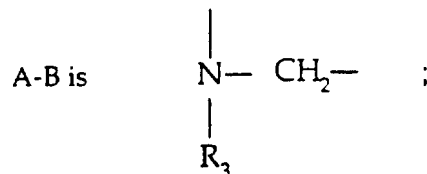
R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

73. A compound according to claim 72 wherein

5



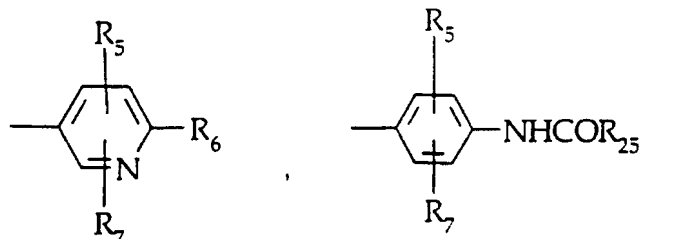
R₃ is the moiety:

10



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

15

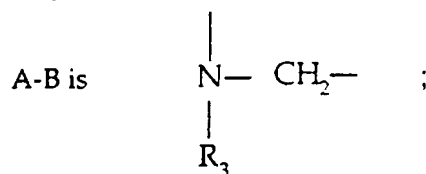


20

and Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 72.

74. A compound according to claim 72 wherein

25

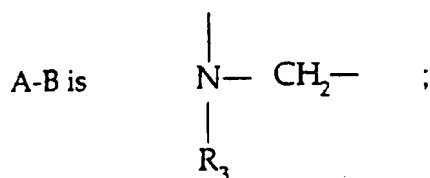


Y is O; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 72.

30

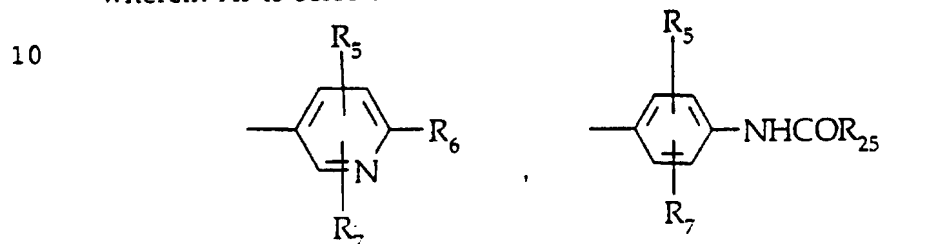
75. A compound according to claim 72 wherein



5 R_3 is the moiety:



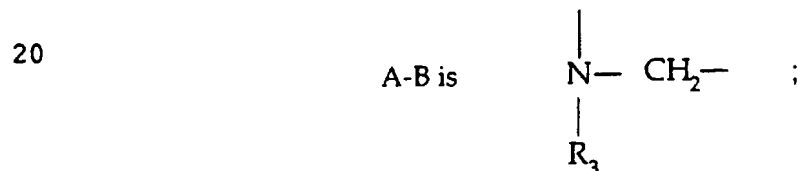
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



15 Y is O; and

$\text{R}_a, \text{R}_b, \text{R}_c, \text{R}_1, \text{R}_2, \text{R}_3, \text{R}_4, \text{R}_5, \text{R}_6, \text{R}_7, \text{R}_8, \text{R}_9, \text{R}_{10}, \text{R}_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 72.

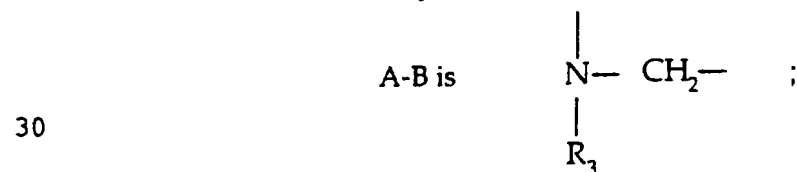
76. A compound according to claim 72 wherein



Y is NH; and

25 $\text{R}_a, \text{R}_b, \text{R}_c, \text{R}_1, \text{R}_2, \text{R}_3, \text{R}_4, \text{R}_5, \text{R}_6, \text{R}_7, \text{R}_8, \text{R}_9, \text{R}_{10}, \text{R}_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 72.

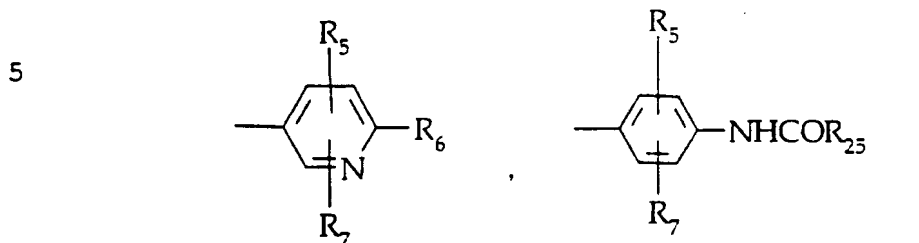
77. A compound according to claim 72 wherein



R_3 is the moiety:

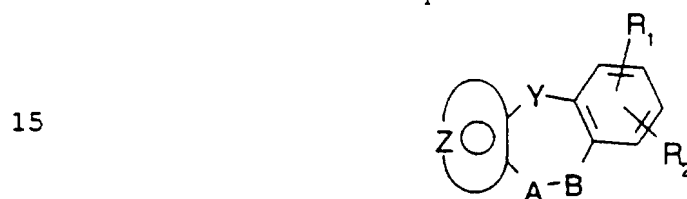


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



10 and Y is NH; and, R_a , R_b , R_c , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as previously defined in Claim 72.

78. A compound selected from those of Formula I:

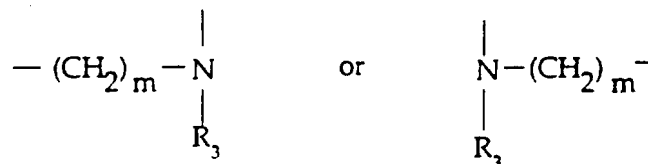


Formula I

20 wherein Y is selected from $(\text{CH}_2)_n$, O, S, NH, NCOCH_3 , N-lower alkyl (C1-C3), CH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), $\text{CHNH-lower alkyl(C1-C3)}$, CHNH_2 , $\text{CHN[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]}_2$, $\text{CHO-lower alkyl(C1-C3)}$, $\text{CHS-lower alkyl(C1-C3)}$,

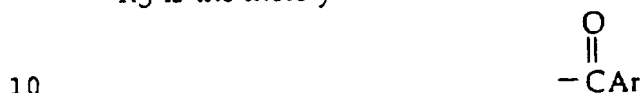
wherein n is an integer from 0-2;

25 A-B is

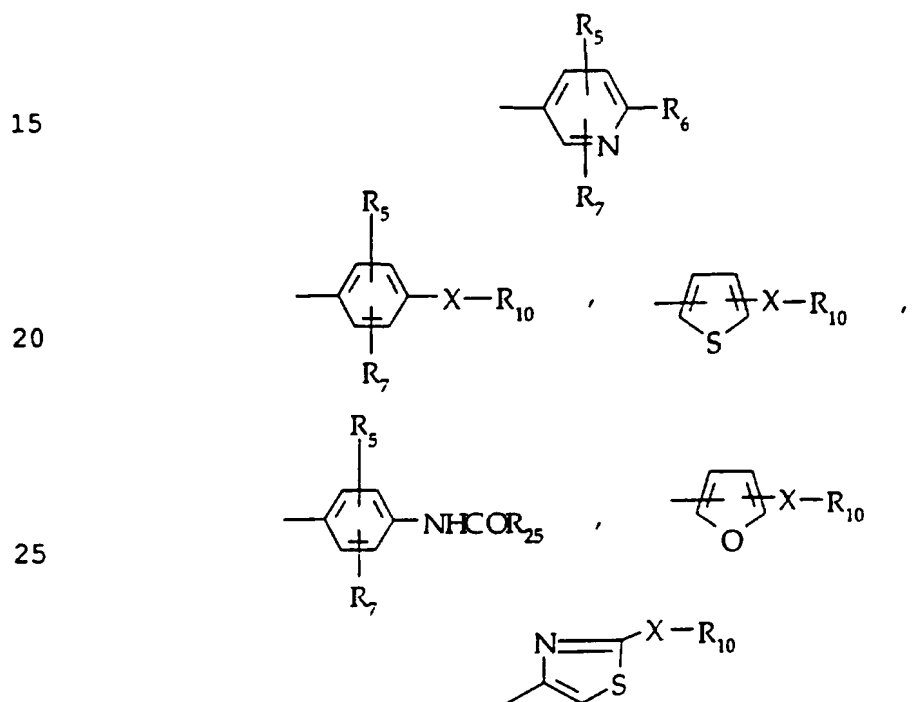


30 wherein m is an integer from 1-2, provided that when Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)_n$ - and $n=2$, m may also be zero and when n is zero, m may also be three, provided also that when Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)_n$ - and n is 2, m may not also be two;

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, -S-
 lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂ lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 5 -SO₂NH₂, -SO₂NH lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
 R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;
 R₃ is the moiety



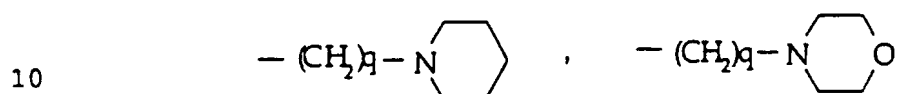
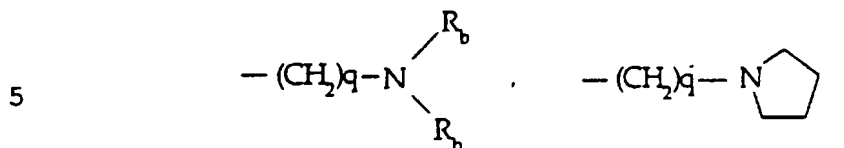
wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group



and X is O, S, -NCH₃ or -NH

R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);
 R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, (C₁-C₃)lower
 alkoxy and halogen

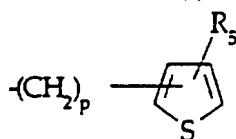
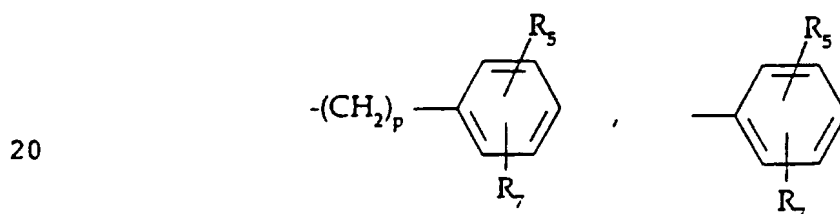
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅; and

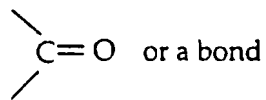
(b) a moiety of the formula:

15 -X-R₁₀, wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



and p is zero to three;

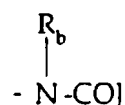
X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,



and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

5

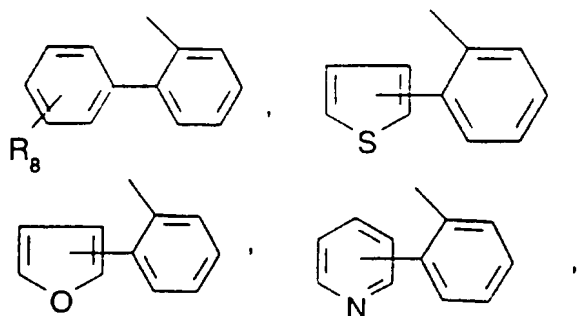
(c) a moiety of the formula:



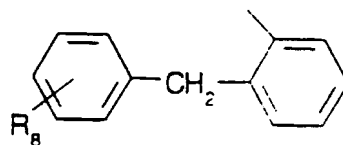
10

wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

15



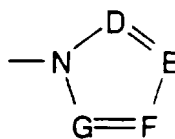
20



25

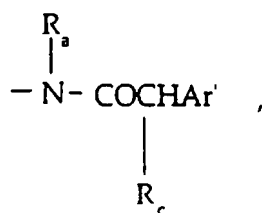
or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

30

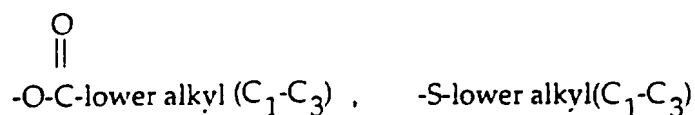


wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

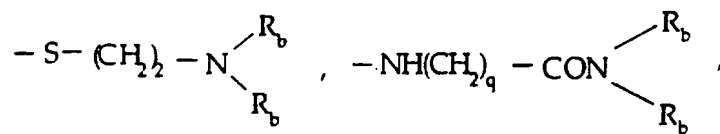
5 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



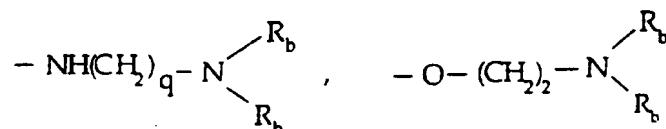
10



15

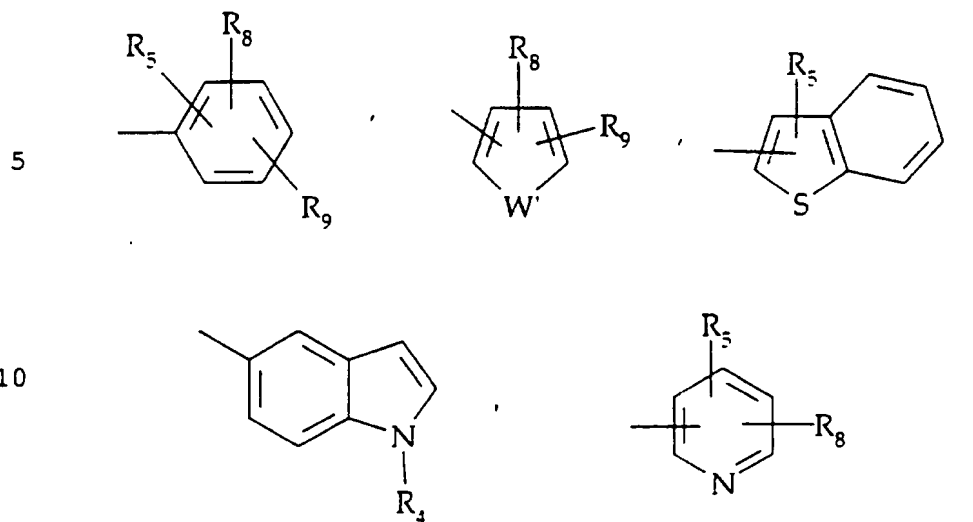


20



wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

25 wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

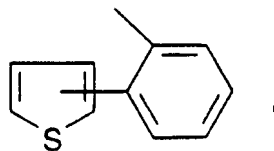
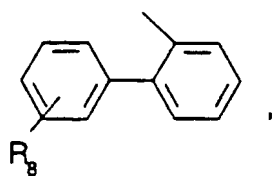


R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;

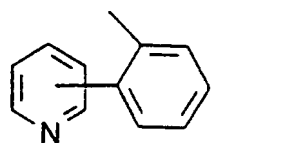
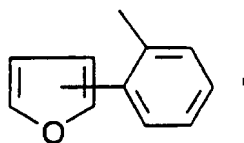
W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

R₂₅ is selected from the moieties

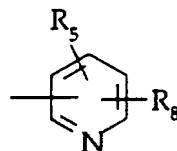
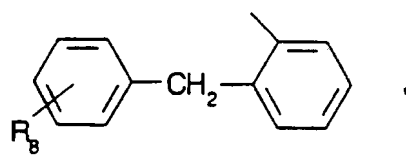
5



10



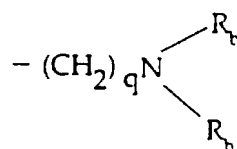
15



and the moiety $Z \bigcirc$

5 represents: a 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom, wherein the 6-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, formyl, a moiety of the formula:

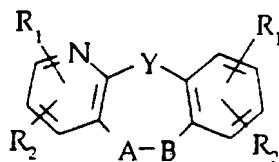
10



halogen or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts,
15 esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

79. A compound selected from those of the formulae:

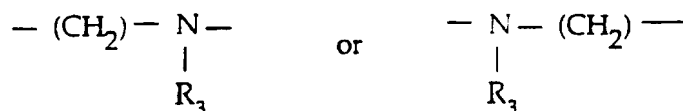
20



wherein Y is selected from -(CH₂)-, O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHNH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHNH₂, CHN[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, CHO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHS-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

25

A-B is



30

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),

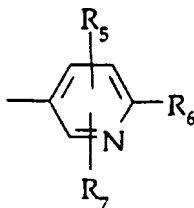
-NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂;
 R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃),
 or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

5 R₃ is the moiety:

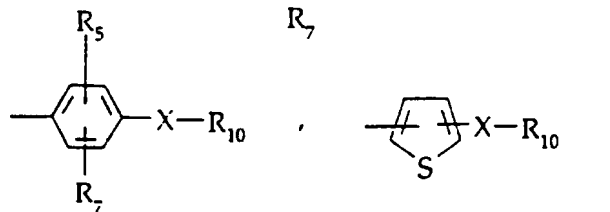


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

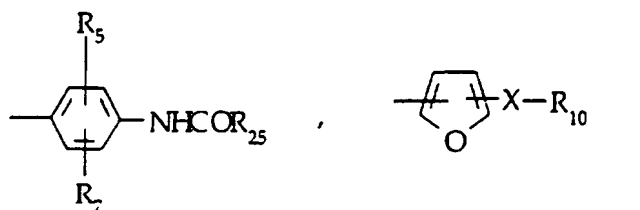
10



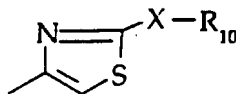
15



20



25

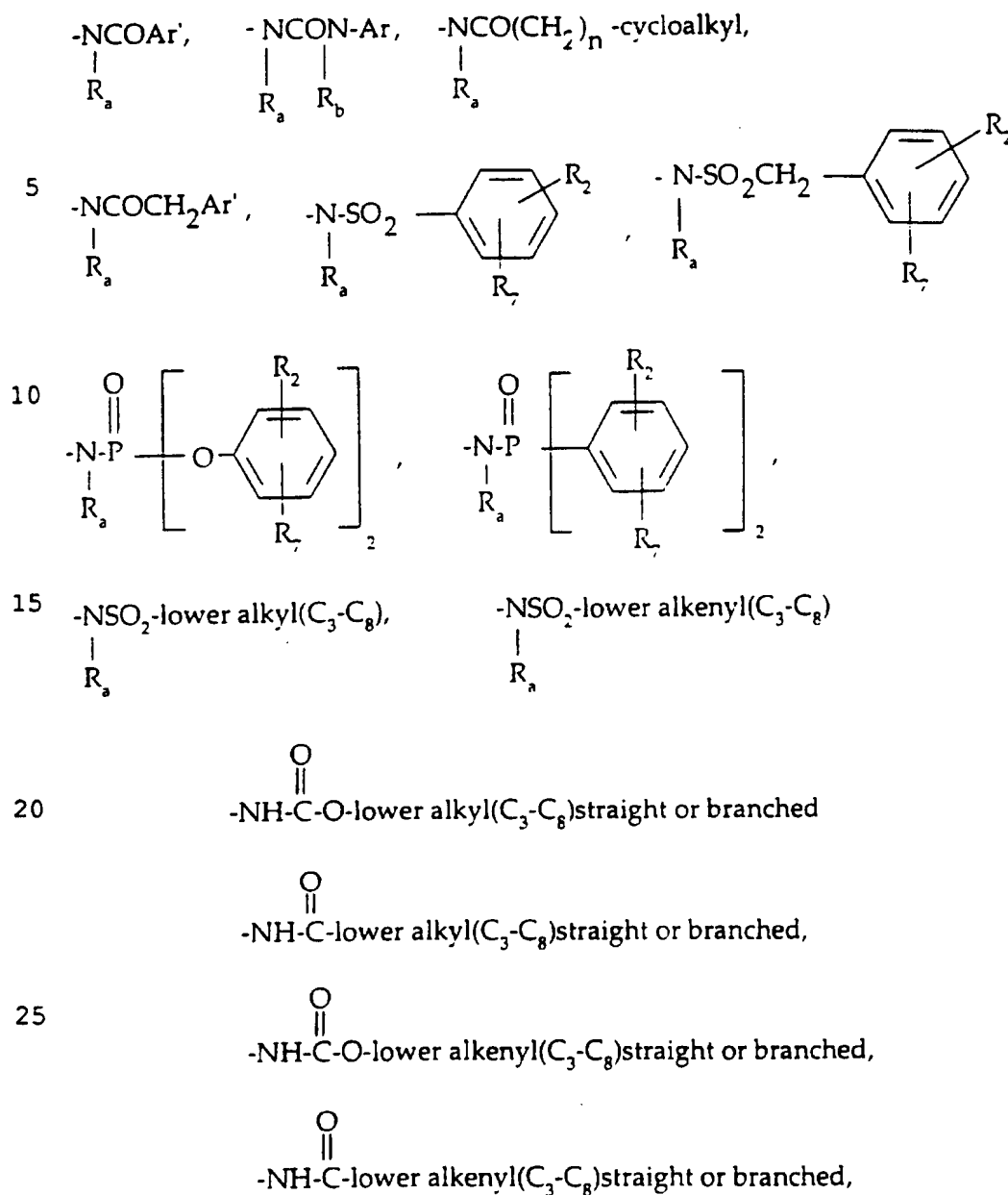


R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

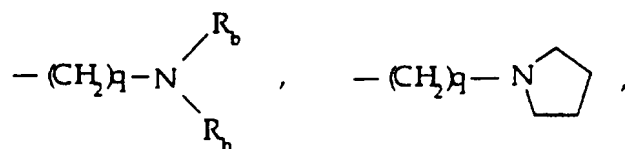
R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen(C₁-C₃)lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen;

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:

30



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5

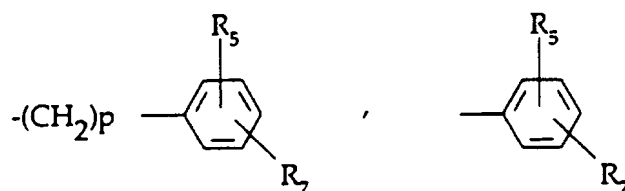


10 $-(CH_2)_2-O$ -lower alkyl(C1-C3) or $-CH_2CH_2OH$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$;

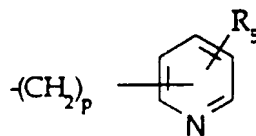
and (b) a moiety of the formula:

$-X-R_{10}$; wherein R_{10} is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl (C3-C8), $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6),

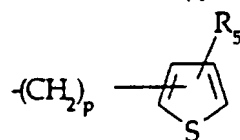
15



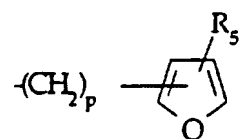
20



25

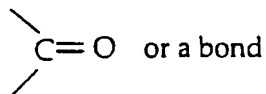


30



and p is zero to three:

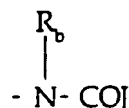
X is O, S, NH, NCH_3 ,



and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

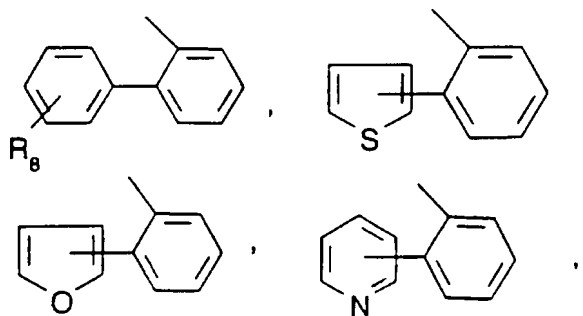
5

(c) a moiety of the formula:



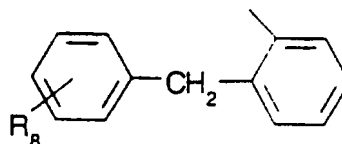
10 wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties

15



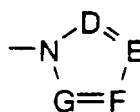
20

25



or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

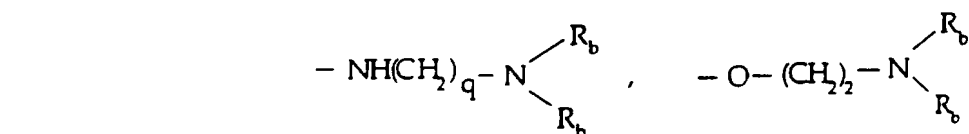
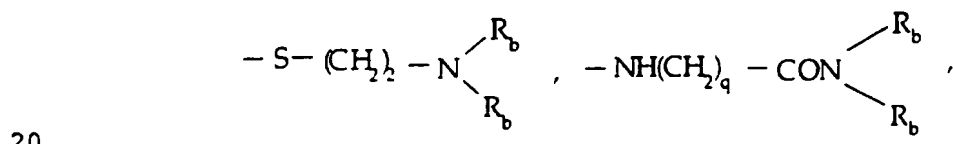
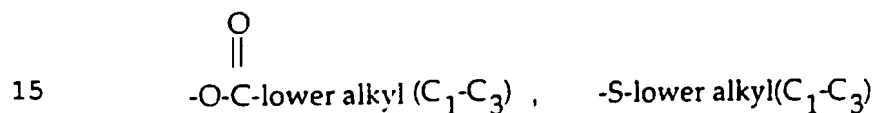
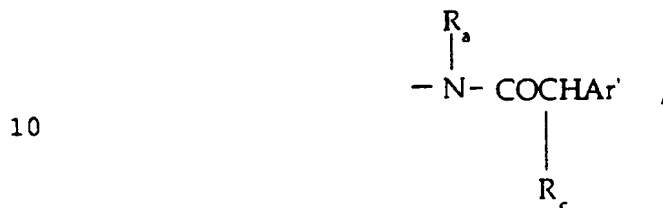
30



wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore

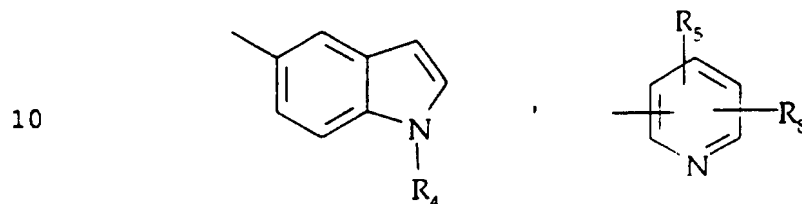
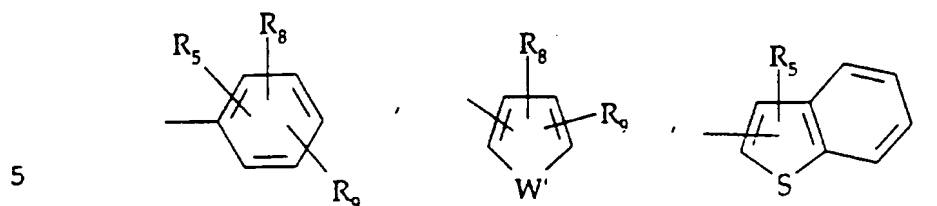
5 defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

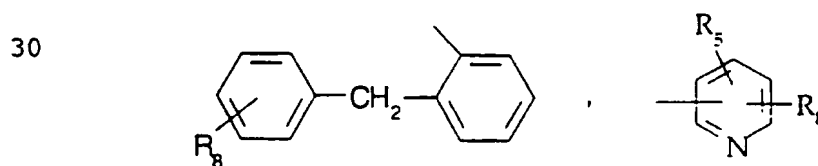
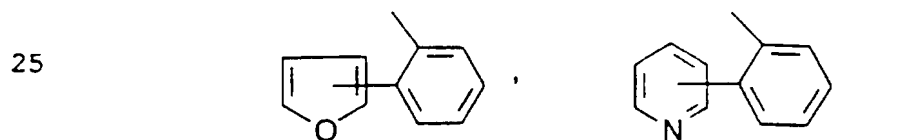
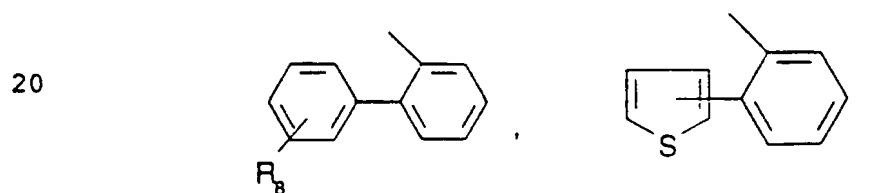


wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

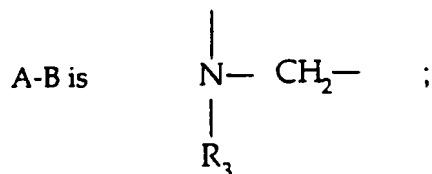


15 R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂,
 -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

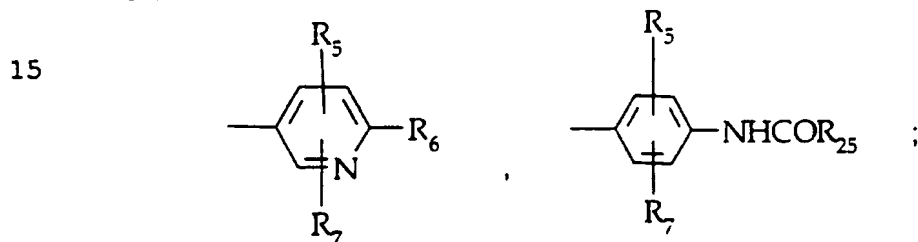
5 80. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



10 R₃ is the moiety:

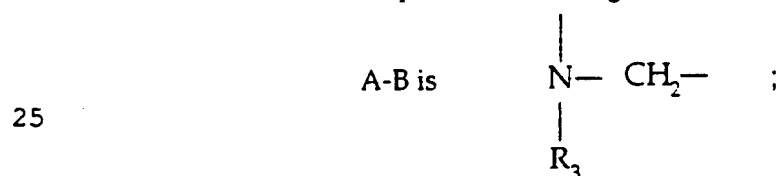


wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



20 and Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

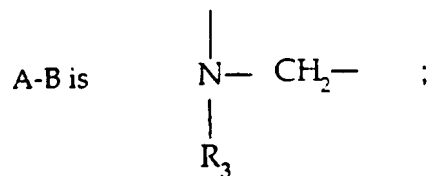
81. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



Y is -(CH₂)_n; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

30 82. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



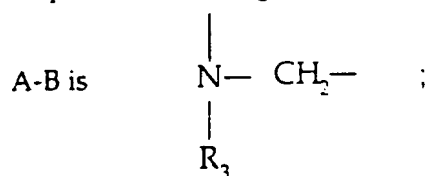
5

Y is O; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

83. A compound according to claim 79 wherein

10

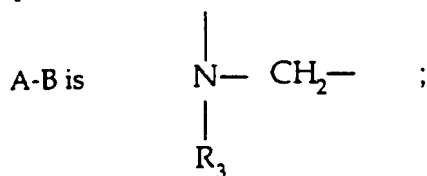


15

Y is NH; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

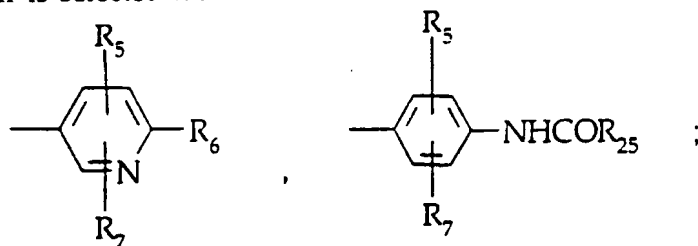
84. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



R₃ is the moiety:



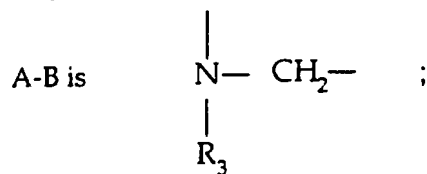
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)-$; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

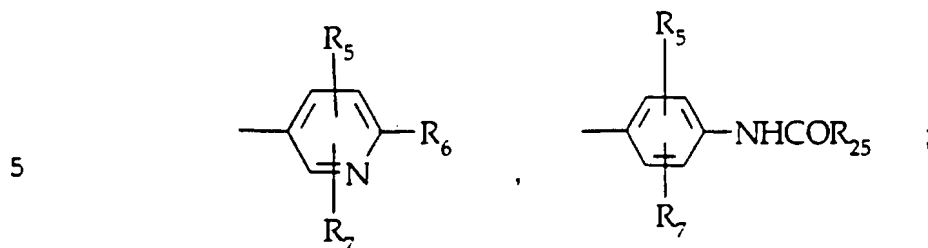
85. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



R₃ is the moiety:



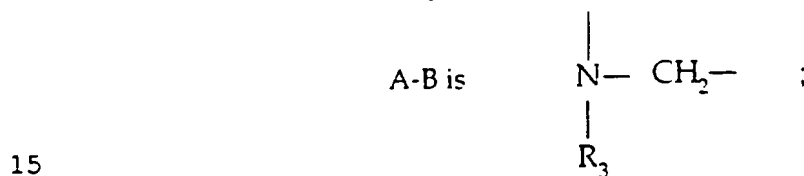
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is O; and

10 $R_a, R_b, R_c, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_6, R_7, R_8, R_9, R_{10}, R_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

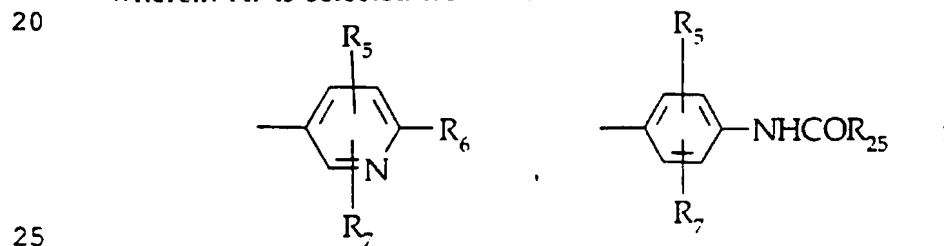
86. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



R_3 is the moiety:



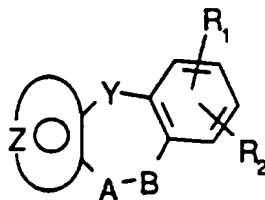
20 wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is NH; and

$R_a, R_b, R_c, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_6, R_7, R_8, R_9, R_{10}, R_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

87. A compound selected from those of Formula I:

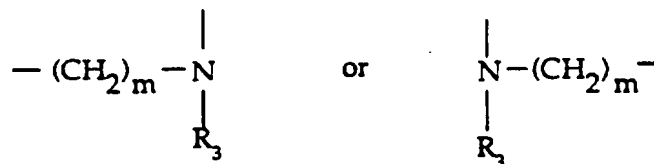


Formula I

wherein Y is selected from (CH₂)_n, O, S, NH, NCOCH₃, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHNH₂, CHN[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂, CHO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), CHS-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃),

wherein n is an integer from 0-2;

A-B is



10

wherein m is an integer from 1-2, provided that when Y is -(CH₂)_n- and n=2, m may also be zero and when n is zero, m may also be three, provided also that when Y is -(CH₂)_n- and n is 2, m may not also be two;

15 R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, -S-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -SO₂ lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂, -SO₂NH₂, -SO₂NH lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl (C₁-C₃)]₂;

20

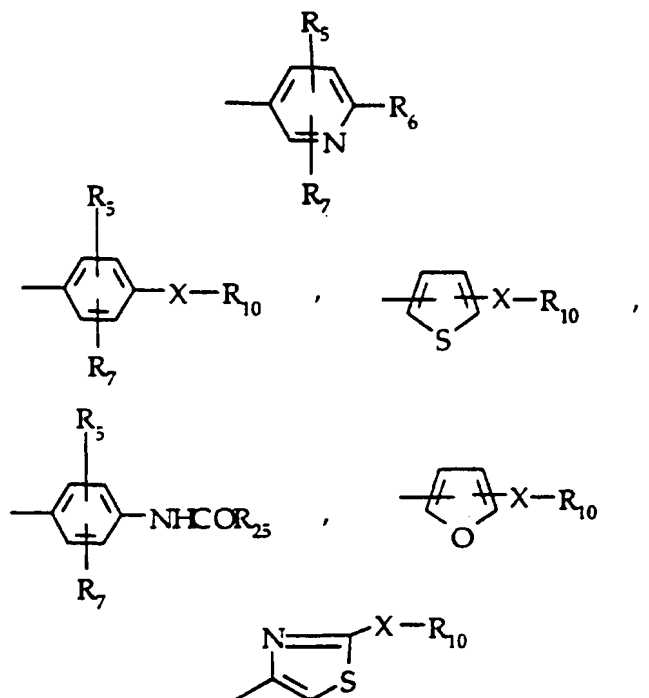
R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

25

R₃ is the moiety



wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group

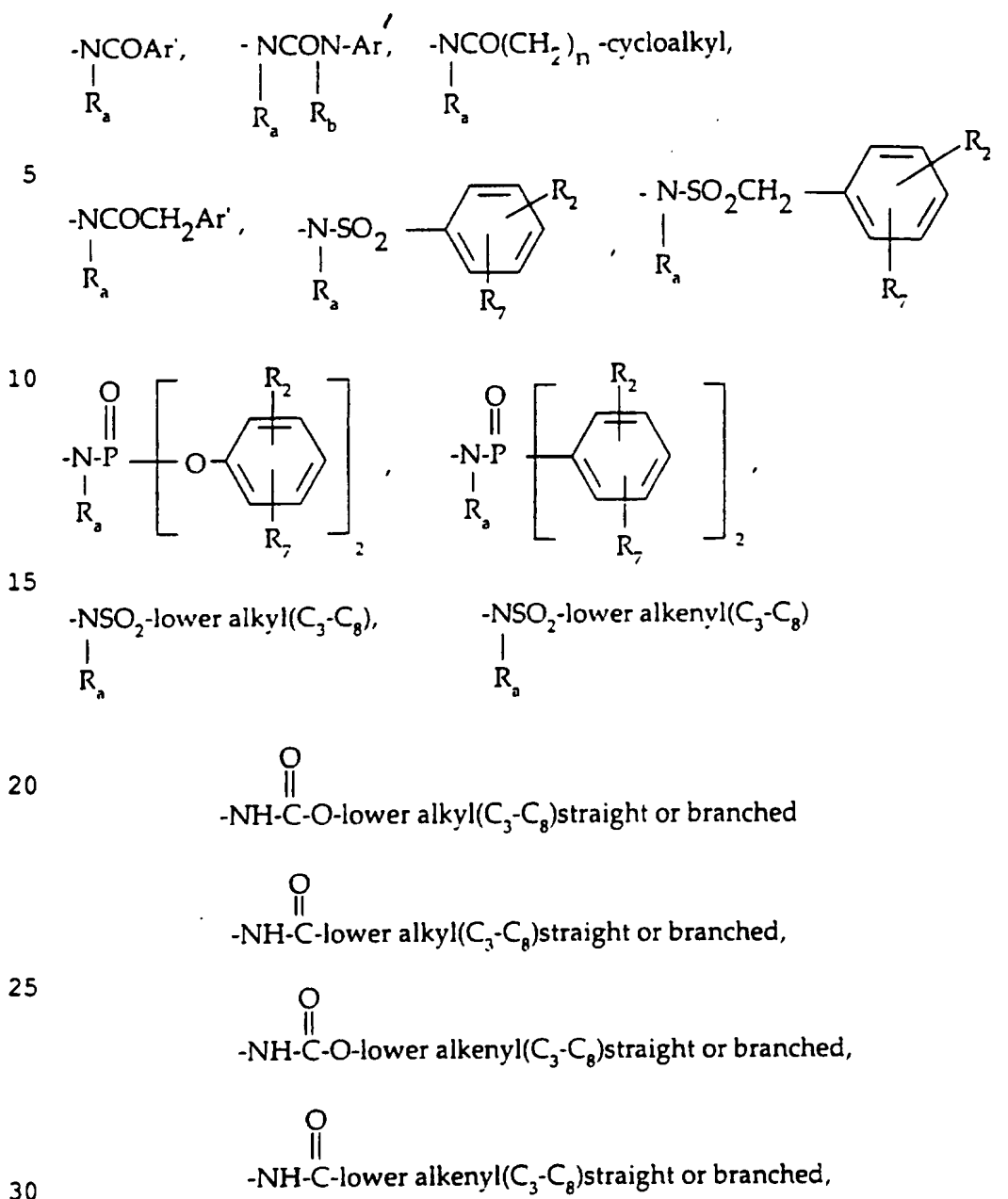


5 and X is O, S, $-NCH_3$ or $-NH$

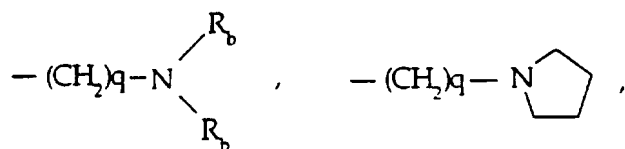
R_4 is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C_1-C_3), $-CO-$ lower alkyl (C_1-C_3);

R_5 and R_7 are selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) lower alkyl, (C_1-C_3) lower alkoxy and halogen

10 R_6 is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



5

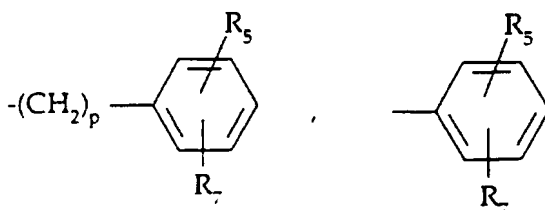


10 $-(CH_2)_2-O$ -lower alkyl(C1-C3) or $-CH_2CH_2OH$; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, $-CH_3$ or $-C_2H_5$; and

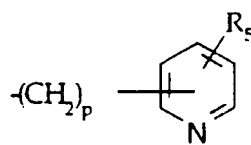
(b) a moiety of the formula:

$-X-R_{10}$, wherein R_{10} is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6),

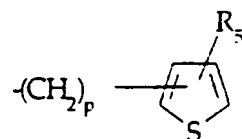
15



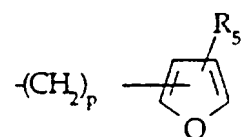
20



25

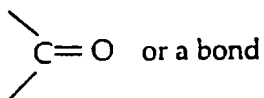


30



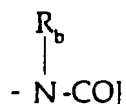
and p is zero to three;

X is O, S, NH, NCH_3 ,

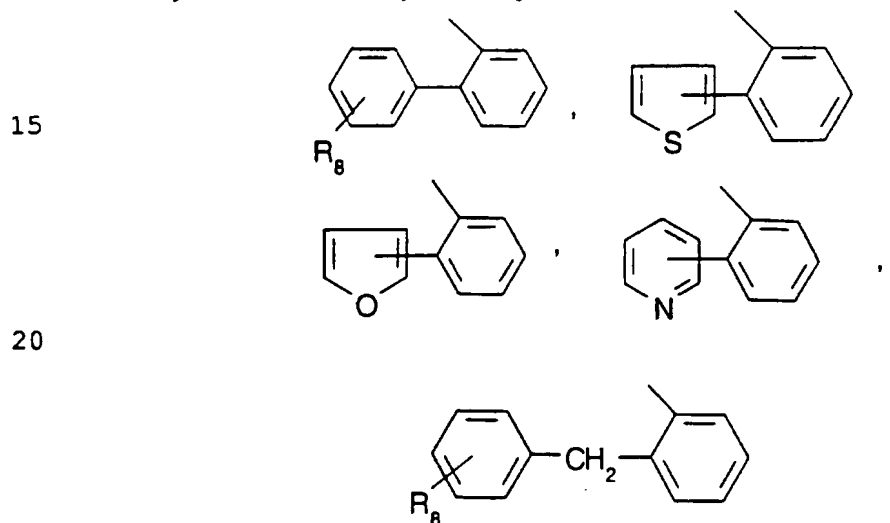


and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined.

5 (c) a moiety of the formula:



10 wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl (C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, the moieties



or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

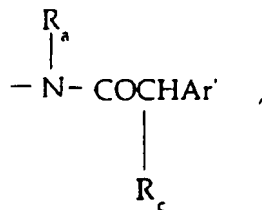


wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃)

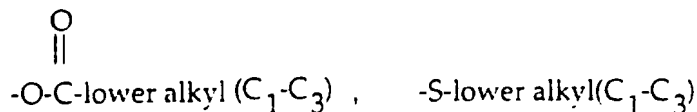
lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:

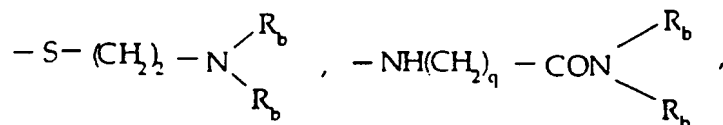
5



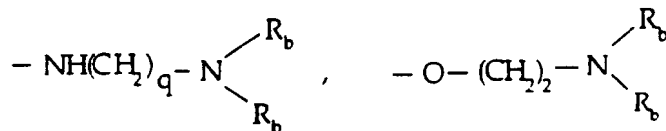
10



15



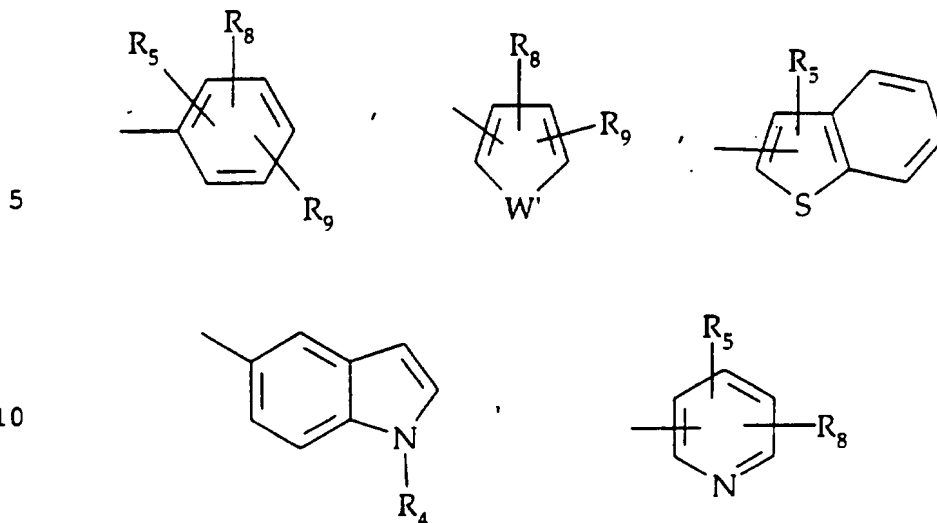
20



wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

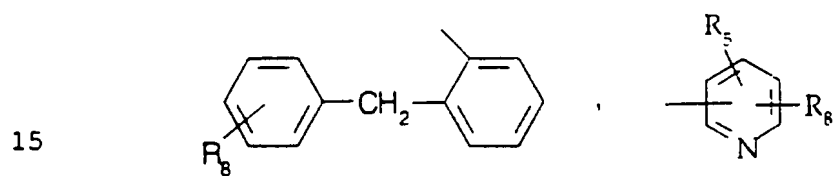
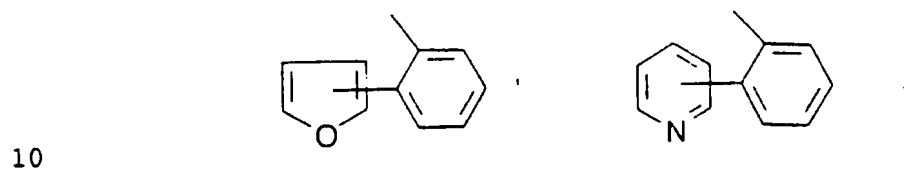
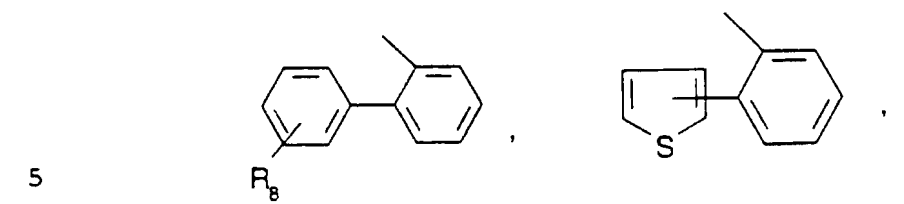
25



15 R₈ and R₉ are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;


W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)

20 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



20

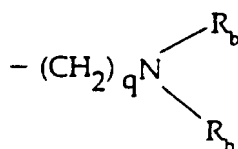
25

and the moiety 

5

represents: a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one S heteroatom wherein the 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring is optionally substituted by (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, formyl, a moiety of the formula:

10

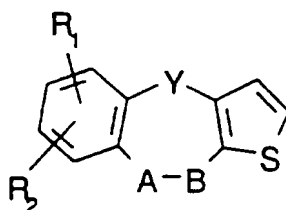


15

halogen or (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and pro-drug forms thereof.

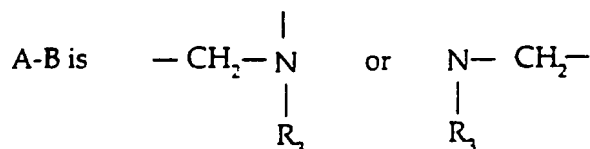
88. A compound selected from those of the formula:

20



wherein Y is selected from $-(\text{CH}_2)-$, O, S, NH, and N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

25



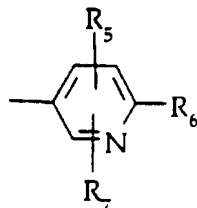
30

R₁ is hydrogen, halogen (chlorine, bromine, fluorine, iodine), OH, S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SH, -SO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -SO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NO₂, -NH₂, -NHCO lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, SO₂NH₂; -SO₂NH lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or -SO₂N[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂; R₂ is hydrogen, Cl, Br, F, I, -OH, lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or R₁ and R₂ taken together are methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

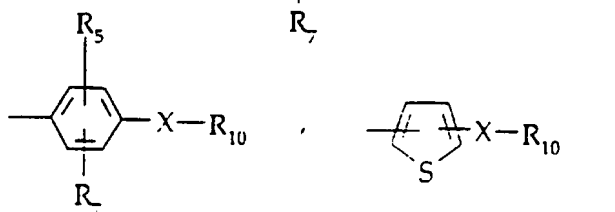
R₃ is the moiety:



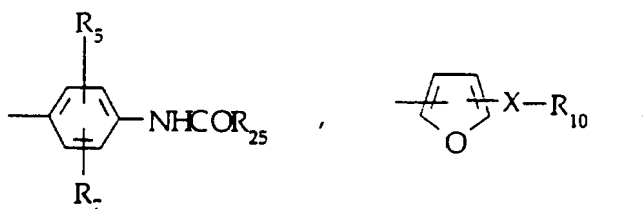
5 wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



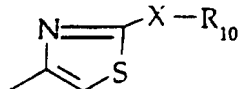
10



15



20

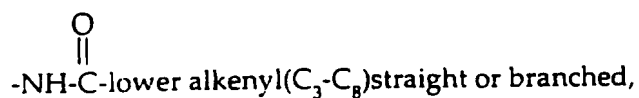
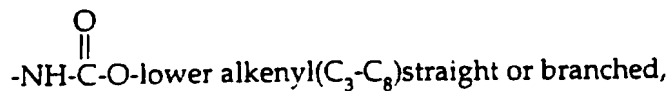
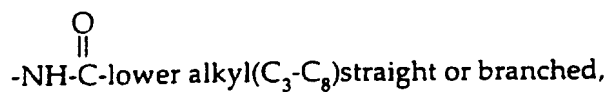
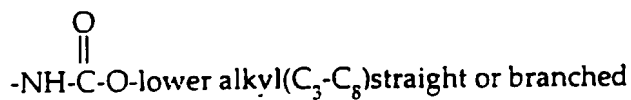
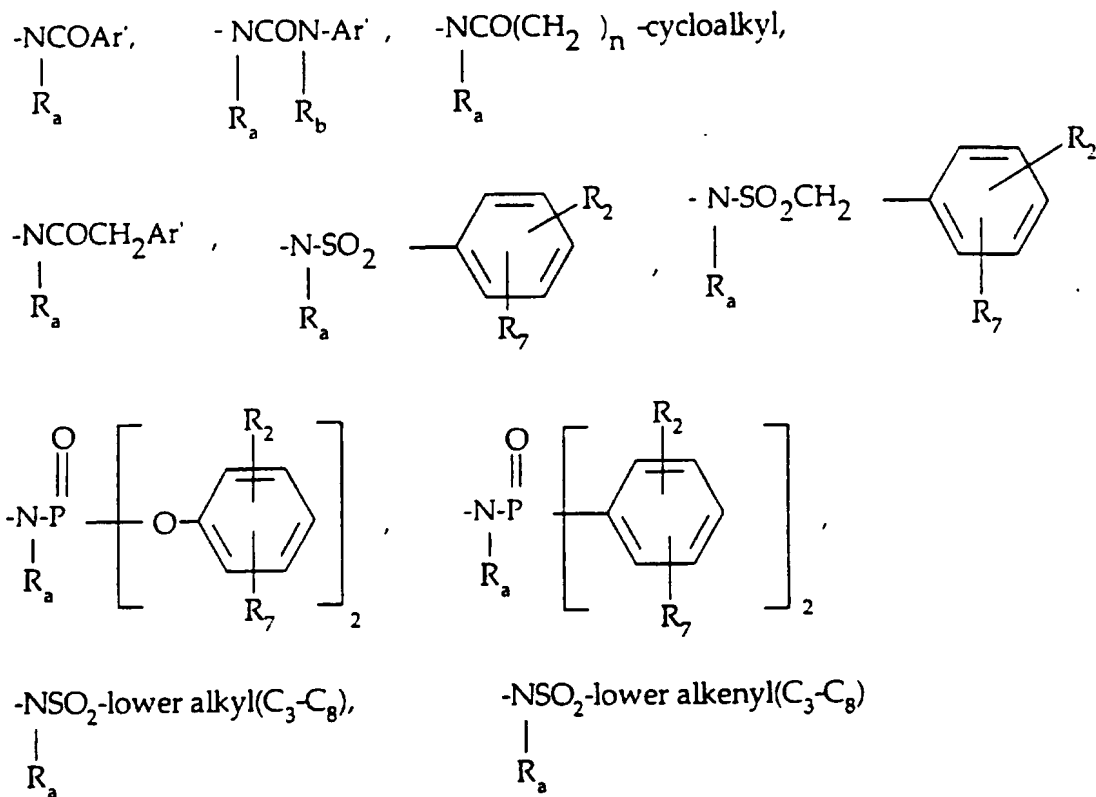


R₄ is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C₁-3), -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃);

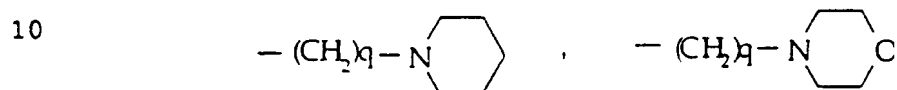
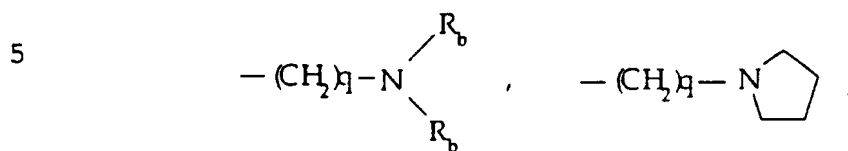
R₅ and R₇ are selected from hydrogen(C₁-C₃) lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) lower alkoxy and halogen

25

R₆ is selected from (a) moieties of the formula:



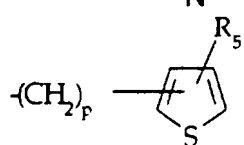
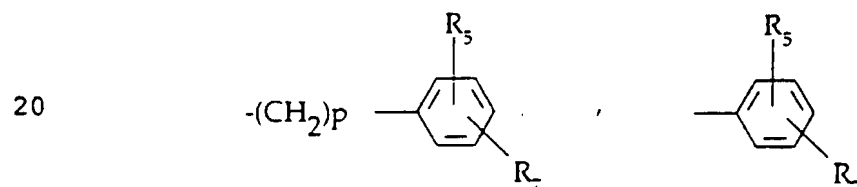
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C₃ to C₆ cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R_a is hydrogen, CH₃, C₂H₅, moieties of the formulae:



-(CH₂)₂-O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) or -CH₂CH₂OH; q is one, two or three; R_b is hydrogen, -CH₃ or -C₂H₅;

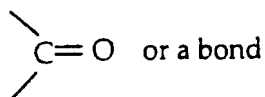
and (b) a moiety of the formula:

15 -X-R₁₀; wherein R₁₀ is lower alkyl(C₃-C₈), lower alkenyl (C₃-C₈), -(CH₂)_p-cycloalkyl(C₃-C₆),



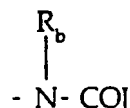
and p is zero to three:

X is O, S, NH, NCH₃,

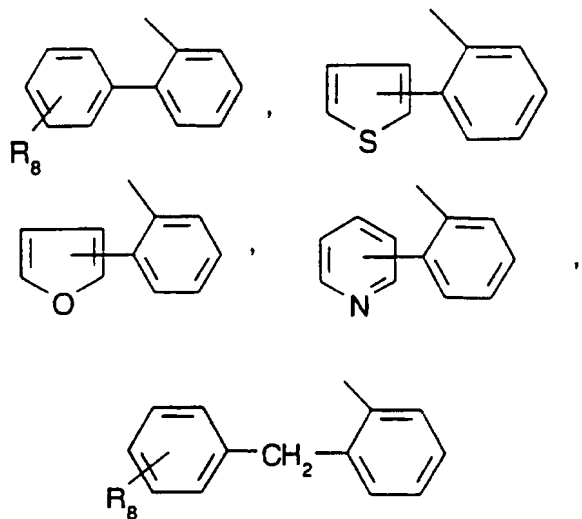


5 and R₅ and R₇ are as previously defined

(c) a moiety of the formula:



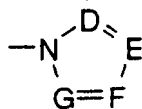
10 wherein J is R_a, lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C₃-C₈) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene,
15 the moieties



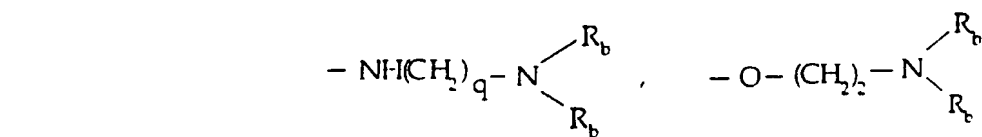
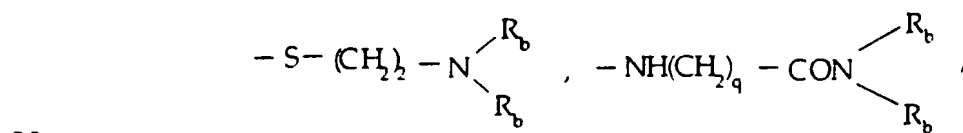
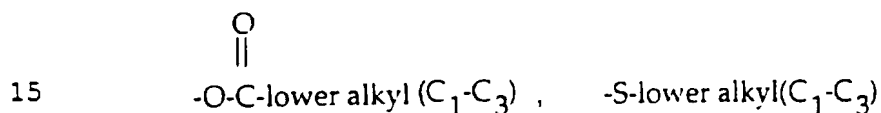
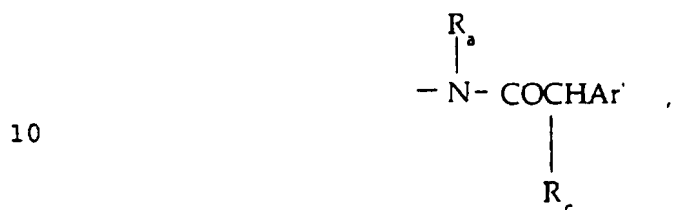
25

or -CH₂-K' wherein K' is halogen, -OH, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

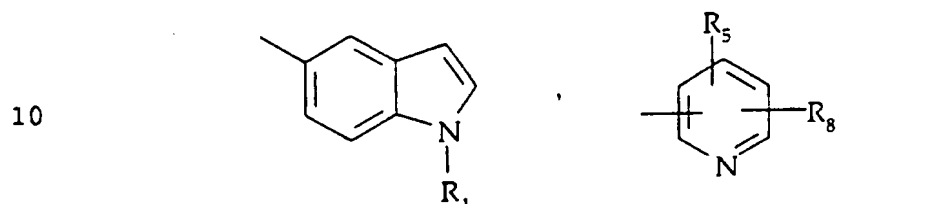
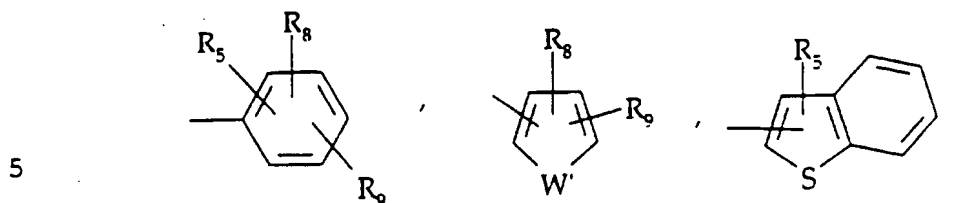
30



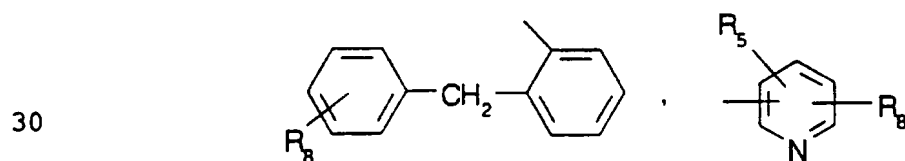
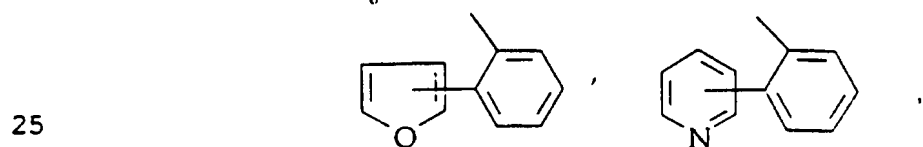
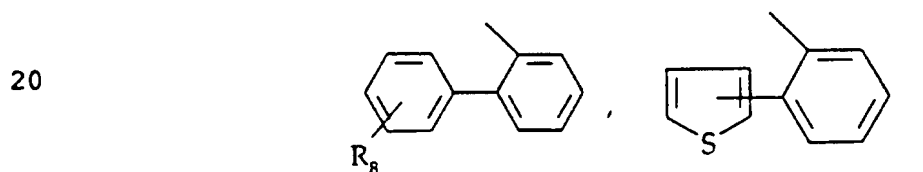
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C₁-C₃) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), CHO, (C₁-C₃)lower alkoxy, -CO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), and R_a and R_b are as hereinbefore defined;
 5 (d) a moiety selected from those of the formulae:



wherein R_c is selected from halogen, (C₁-C₃)lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃) and OH; R_b is as hereinbefore defined;
 wherein Ar' is selected from the group:

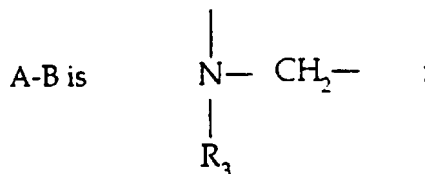


R8 and R9 are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl (C₁-C₃), O-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), S-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -CF₃, -CN, -OH, -SCF₃, -OCF₃, halogen, NO₂, amino, or -NH-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); -N-[lower alkyl(C₁-C₃)]₂, -N(R_b)(CH₂)_q-N(R_b)₂;
 15 R₂₅ is selected from the moieties



W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), -NCO-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃), or NSO₂-lower alkyl(C₁-C₃); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5 89. A compound according to claim 88 wherein

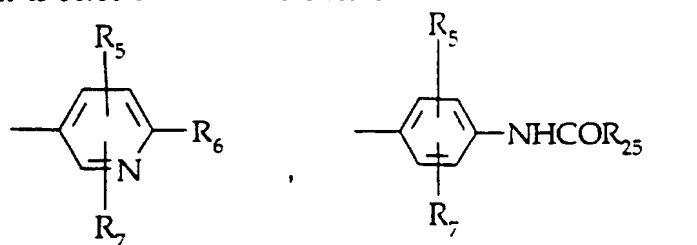


10 R₃ is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

15

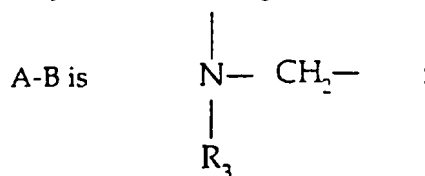


20

and Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

90. A compound according to claim 88 wherein

25

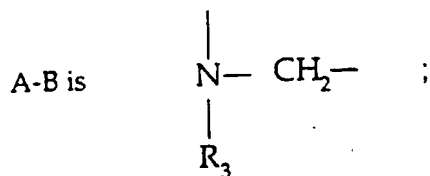


Y is -(CH₂)-; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

30

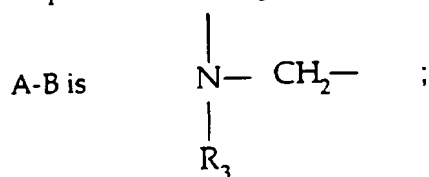
91. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



Y is O; and

$\text{R}_a, \text{R}_b, \text{R}_c, \text{R}_1, \text{R}_2, \text{R}_3, \text{R}_4, \text{R}_5, \text{R}_6, \text{R}_7, \text{R}_8, \text{R}_9, \text{R}_{10}, \text{R}_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

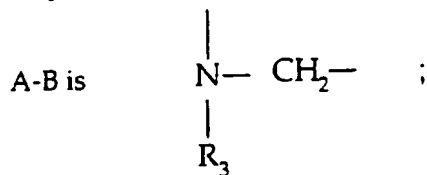
92. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



Y is NH; and

$\text{R}_a, \text{R}_b, \text{R}_c, \text{R}_1, \text{R}_2, \text{R}_3, \text{R}_4, \text{R}_5, \text{R}_6, \text{R}_7, \text{R}_8, \text{R}_9, \text{R}_{10}, \text{R}_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

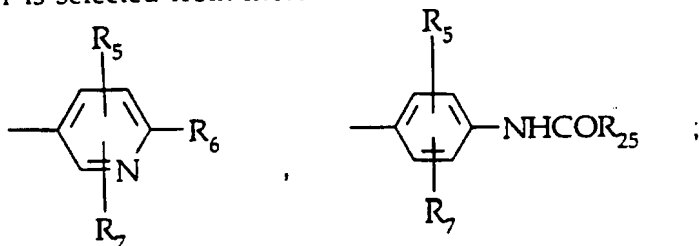
93. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



R_3 is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



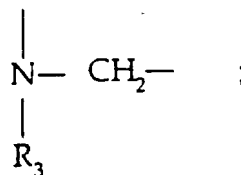
Y is $-(\text{CH}_2)-$; and

$R_a, R_b, R_c, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_6, R_7, R_8, R_9, R_{10}, R_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

94. A compound according to claim 88 wherein

5

A-B is



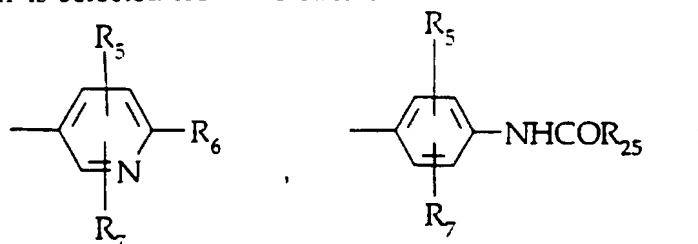
R_3 is the moiety:

10



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

15



and Y is NH;

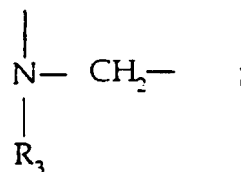
20

$R_a, R_b, R_c, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_6, R_7, R_8, R_9, R_{10}, R_{25}$ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

95. A compound according to claim 88 wherein

25

A-B is

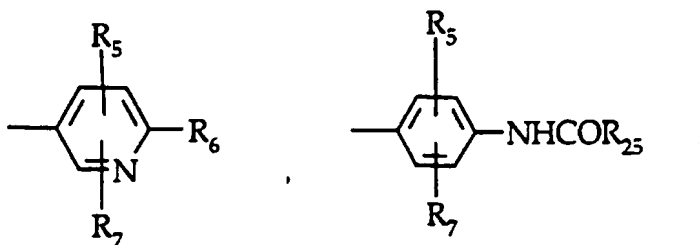


R_3 is the moiety:

30



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



and Y is O;

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅

5 are as previously defined in Claim 88.

96. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

97. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chloro-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

98. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-(dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

99. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-(dibenz[b,f][1,4]oxazepin-10(11H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl]-2-(4-pyridinyl)benzamide.

100. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-(pyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzoxazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

101. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-(pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

102. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzoxazepin-5(6H)-ylcarbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

103. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-ylcarbonyl)-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

104. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-yl-carbonyl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

105. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(6,11-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-yl-carbonyl)phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide,
5 hydrochloride.

106. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
10

107. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)-carbonyl]-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

108. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)-carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
15

109. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)-carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

110. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(5,11-dihydro-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]diazepin-10-yl)-carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
20

111. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
25

112. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

113. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
30

114. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-dibenz[b,e]azepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

115. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

116. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-
5 [(6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

117. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

10 118. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(6,11-dihydro-5H-pyrido[2,3-b][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-yl)-carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

119. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-
15 [(4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

120. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-[(4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

121. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
20 [(4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)-carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

122. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-[(4,5-dihydropyrazolo[4,3-d][1]benzazepin-6(1H)-yl)-carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

25 123. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-(4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

124. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-
30 (4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-phenyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

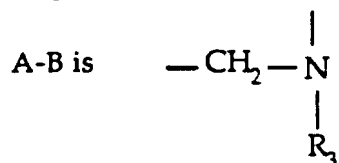
125. The compound according to claim 1, N-[4-(4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

126. The compound according to claim 1, N-[5-
35 (4H-thieno[3,4-b][1,5]benzodiazepin-9(10H)-yl)-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

127. The compound according to claim 1, 5,11-dihydro-10-[4-(2-thienyl)benzoyl]-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]-diazepine.

128. The compound according to claim 1, 5,11-dihydro-10-[4-(3-thienyl)benzoyl]-10H-dibenz[b,e][1,4]-diazepine.

129. A compound according to claim 79 wherein

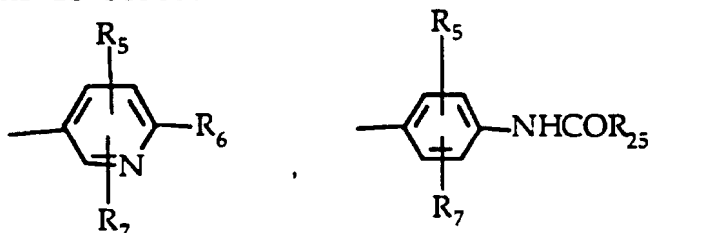


R₃ is the moiety:



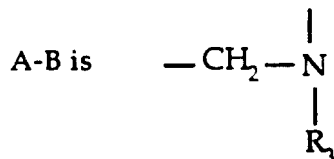
10

wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



15 and Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

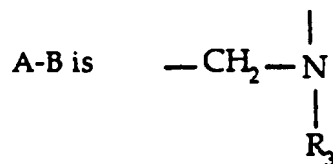
130. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



20 Y is -(CH₂)-; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

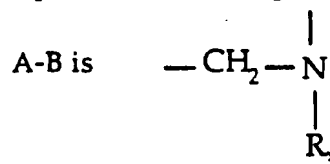
131. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



Y is O; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 79.

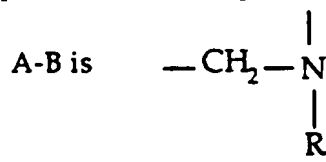
5 132. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



Y is NH; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 79.

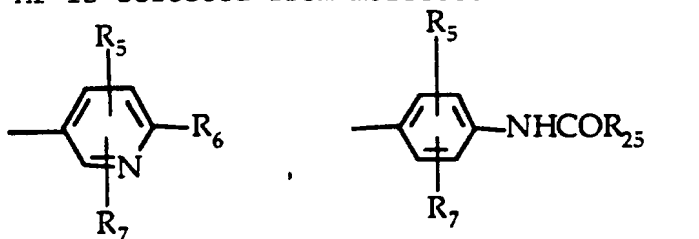
10 133. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



R₃ is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

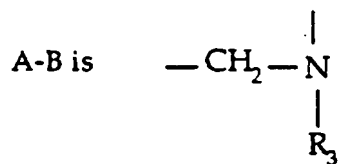


15

Y is -(CH₂)-; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

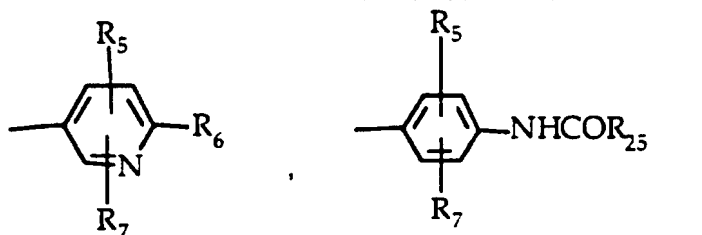
134. A compound according to claim 79 wherein



5 R₃ is the moiety:



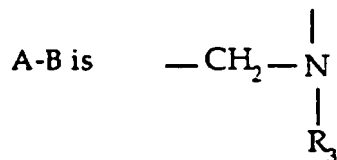
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is O; and

10 R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

135. A compound according to claim 79 wherein

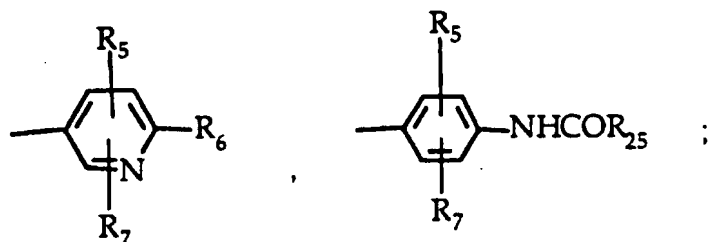


R₃ is the moiety:



15

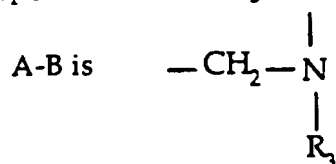
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is NH; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 79.

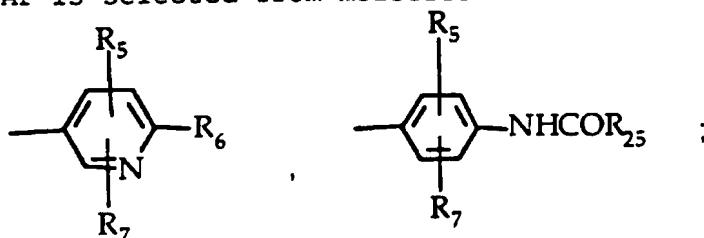
5 136. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



R₃ is the moiety:



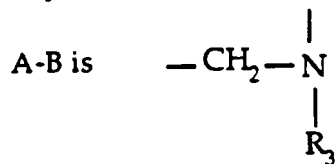
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



10

and Y, R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅ are as previously defined in Claim 88.

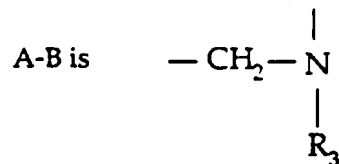
137. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



15 Y is -(CH₂)-; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 88.

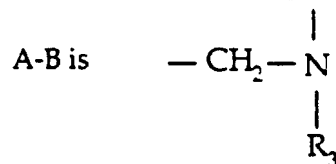
138. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



5 Y is O; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 88.

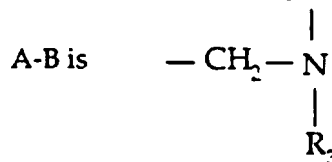
139. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



10 Y is NH; and

R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 88.

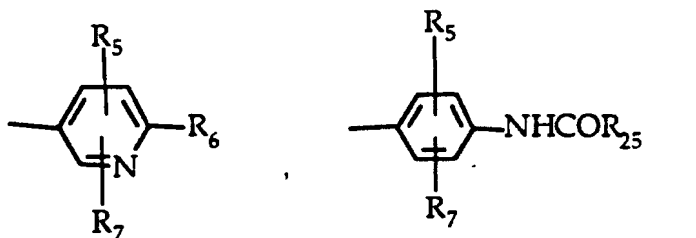
140. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



15 R₃ is the moiety:



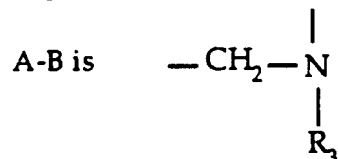
wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



Y is $-(CH_2)-$; and

R_a , R_b , R_c , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as previously defined in Claim 88.

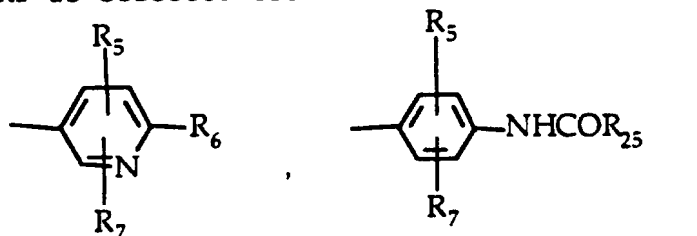
5 141. A compound according to claim 88 wherein



R_3 is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:

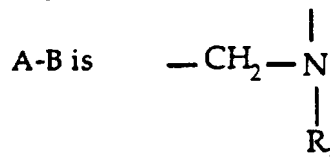


10

and Y is NH;

R_a , R_b , R_c , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_6 , R_7 , R_8 , R_9 , R_{10} , R_{25} are as previously defined in Claim 88.

142. A compound according to claim 88 wherein

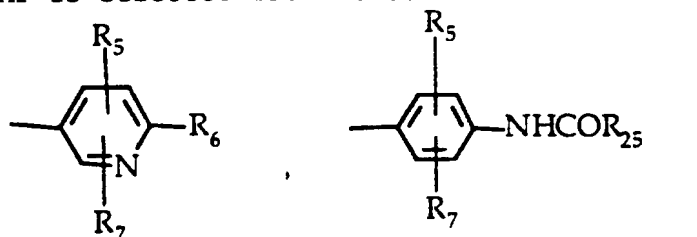


15

R_3 is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from moieties of the formula:



and Y is O;

- 5 R_a, R_b, R_c, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₆, R₇, R₈, R₉, R₁₀, R₂₅
are as previously defined in Claim 88.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.
PCT, JS 96/01051

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C07D223/20 C07D223/28 C07D401/12 C07D495/04 A61K31/55
C07D487/04 C07D498/04 C07D267/20 C07D243/38 C07D471/04

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X, P	EP, A, 0 640 592 (AMERICAN CYANAMID CO., USA) 1 March 1995 see the whole document ---	1-141
P, X	WO, A, 95 03305 (YAMANOUCHI PHARMACEUTICAL CO., LTD., JAPAN) 2 February 1995 see the whole document ---	1-141
P, X	EP, A, 0 636 625 (AMERICAN CYANAMID CO., USA) 1 February 1995 see the whole document ---	1-141
X	EP, A, 0 620 216 (FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO., LTD., JAPAN) 19 October 1994 see the whole document --- -/-	1-141

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- * "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- * "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- * "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- * "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- * "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- * "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- * "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- * "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- * "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

6 June 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

18.06.96

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+ 31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax: (+ 31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Kissler, B

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/JS 96/01051

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US,A,5 258 510 (OGAWA H.; ET. AL.) 2 November 1992 see the whole document ---	1-141
X	WO,A,91 05549 (OTSUKA PHARMACEUTICAL CO., LTD., JAPAN) 2 May 1991 see the whole document -----	1-141

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 96/01051

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Although claim 62 is directed to a method of treatment of (diagnostic method practised on) the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

Please see attached sheet ./.
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/

The definition of the following substituent(s) is too general and/or encompasses too broad a range of totally different chemical groups, only partly supported by examples given in the descriptive part of the application:

A, B, Y, R3 and sub-definitions, as well as the structure of the tricyclic ring system

The number of theoretically conceivable compounds resulting from the combination of all claimed substituents of above list precludes a comprehensive search. Guided by the spirit of the application and the inventive concept as disclosed in the descriptive part of the present application the search has been limited to the following case(s):

Tricyclic azepines, optionally having further hetero atoms in the seven-membered ring, one ring nitrogen atom being substituted by a phenyl(opt. subst.)carboxamido-(unsaturated monocyclic ring system)-carboxamido group.

For PCT :

(Cf. Arts. 6, 15 and Rule 33 PCT, Guidelines Exam. Part B, Chapt. III, 3.6, 3.7)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PC1, JS 96/01051

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP-A-640592	01-03-95	AU-B- 6877694	09-02-95
		CA-A- 2128955	30-01-95
		CN-A- 1106802	16-08-95
		CZ-A- 9401798	15-02-95
		FI-A- 943542	30-01-95
		HU-A- 71548	28-12-95
		JP-A- 7179430	18-07-95
		NO-A- 942817	30-01-95
		PL-A- 304496	06-02-95
		SK-A- 88094	10-05-95
		US-A- 5512563	30-04-96
		ZA-A- 9405604	09-03-95
WO-A-9503305	02-02-95	AU-B- 7195794	20-02-95
		CA-A- 2167673	02-02-95
		EP-A- 0709386	01-05-96
		FI-A- 960260	19-01-96
		NO-A- 960231	21-03-96
		PL-A- 312654	29-04-96
EP-A-0636625	01-02-95	AU-B- 6877794	09-02-95
		CA-A- 2128956	30-01-95
		CN-A- 1106812	16-08-95
		CZ-A- 9401799	15-02-95
		FI-A- 943543	30-01-95
		HU-A- 71495	28-11-95
		JP-A- 7157486	20-06-95
		NO-A- 942816	30-01-95
		PL-A- 304498	06-02-95
		SK-A- 88194	12-04-95
		US-A- 5516774	14-05-96
		ZA-A- 9405603	09-03-95
EP-A-0620216	19-10-94	AU-B- 5932294	20-10-94
		CA-A- 2121112	14-10-94
		CN-A- 1098406	08-02-95
		HU-A- 70197	28-09-95
		JP-A- 7002800	06-01-95
		US-A- 5521170	28-05-96
		ZA-A- 9402325	16-02-95

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/JS 96/01051

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US-A-5258510	02-11-93	JP-A- 4321669	11-11-92
		AU-B- 630284	22-10-92
		AU-B- 7291791	19-12-91
		DE-D- 69026708	30-05-96
		EP-A- 0450097	09-10-91
		WO-A- 9105549	02-05-91
		JP-A- 4154765	27-05-92
		JP-B- 7076214	16-08-95
		CN-A,B 1051038	01-05-91
		CN-A- 1107146	23-08-95

WO-A-9105549	02-05-91	AU-B- 630284	22-10-92
		AU-B- 7291791	19-12-91
		DE-D- 69026708	30-05-96
		EP-A- 0450097	09-10-91
		JP-A- 4154765	27-05-92
		JP-B- 7076214	16-08-95
		US-A- 5258510	02-11-93
		CN-A,B 1051038	01-05-91
		CN-A- 1107146	23-08-95
